

# Introduction to Numerical Modeling

Thomas Wick

Centre de Mathématiques Appliquées (CMAP)

École Polytechnique (X)

91128 Palaiseau, France

<http://www.cmap.polytechnique.fr/~wick/>

thomas.wick@polytechnique.edu

Last update:  
Tuesday, October 2, 2018

Front picture by Elisa Wick

---

## Foreword

These notes accompany the class

MAP 502 - A project on numerical modeling done in two

given at École Polytechnique (France) in the Winter term 2018/2019. This is the 3rd version after the classes taught in Winter 2016/2017 and Winter 2017/2018.

The specific focus will be on modeling and numerical methods for **differential equations** as they are extremely important in a wide range of applications.

This class is divided into two parts:

- Part I: summer readings
- Part II: class on numerical modeling

and the **goals** are:

- Recapitulation of differential and integral calculus as well as basics in linear algebra (**summer readings**)
- Providing a **basic understanding of mathematical modeling** in terms of differential equations, their classification, and additional ingredients such as initial and boundary conditions;
- To **discretize** these equations in time and space in order to prepare them algorithmically for their **computer implementation**;
- To illustrate numerical results of such implementations including programming codes;
- To learn how to **analyze and interpret obtained results**. Do they make sense? What are typical error sources? What is the computational complexity? How fast do we approach a final solution? What is the rate of convergence?

The prerequisites are lectures in calculus, linear algebra and possibly an introduction to numerics. Specifically, the summer readings (Part I) shall recapitulate the most important ingredients for numerical modeling of differential equations considered in Part II.

These notes shall then serve as a preparation for subsequent project work done in groups of two. These projects will have topics involving ODEs and PDEs and consist of mathematical modeling, numerical analysis and programming of a given problem. Programming shall be preferably undertaken in open source languages octave (the open source sister of MATLAB), python, or C++ (pure or in form of open-source finite element packages deal.II or FreeFem++). Thus, these projects deal with **scientific computing** on a basic level.

I would be grateful if you let me know about errors inside these lecture notes via

[thomas.wick@polytechnique.edu](mailto:thomas.wick@polytechnique.edu)

This is a good place to express my thankfulness to my students from both years in the STEEM program at Ecole Polytechnique, namely the winter term 2016/2017 and the winter term 2017/2018, since they asked many questions from which I understood which parts of my lecture and lecture notes needed improvements. Moreover, several misprints have been found by them.

Thomas Wick

(Palaiseau / Hannover, October 2018)

---

**Author information:**  
Prof. Dr. Thomas Wick

**Permanent address**

Institut für Angewandte Mathematik (IfAM)  
Leibniz Universität Hannover  
Welfengarten 1  
30167 Hannover  
Germany  
Phone: +49 511 762 3360  
E-Mail: thomas.wick@ifam.uni-hannover.de  
Web: <https://www.ifam.uni-hannover.de/wick.html>

**Part-time address**

Centre de Mathématiques Appliquées (CMAP)  
École Polytechnique  
Route de Saclay  
91128 PALAISEAU Cedex  
France  
—  
thomas.wick@polytechnique.edu  
<http://www.cmap.polytechnique.fr/~wick/>

## Contents

<b>1 Main literature</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>2 Basics in calculus and linear algebra (summer readings)</b>	<b>11</b>
2.1 Literature for the summer readings . . . . .	11
2.2 Mathematical symbols . . . . .	11
2.3 Arithmetic . . . . .	11
2.4 Differential and integral calculus . . . . .	11
2.5 Linear algebra . . . . .	11
<b>3 Notation (summer readings)</b>	<b>13</b>
3.1 Domains . . . . .	13
3.2 Independent variables . . . . .	13
3.3 Function, vector and tensor notation . . . . .	13
3.4 Partial derivatives . . . . .	13
3.5 Multiindex notation . . . . .	14
3.6 Gradient, divergence, trace, Laplace, rotation . . . . .	14
3.7 Invariants of a matrix . . . . .	15
3.8 Vector spaces . . . . .	15
3.9 Normed spaces . . . . .	16
3.10 Linear mappings . . . . .	16
3.11 Little o and big O - the Landau symbols . . . . .	17
3.12 Taylor expansion . . . . .	18
3.13 Transformation of integrals: substitution rule / change of variables . . . . .	18
3.14 Gauss-Green theorem / Divergence theorem . . . . .	19
3.15 Integration by parts and Green's formulae . . . . .	20
<b>4 Quiz (finishing the summer readings)</b>	<b>21</b>
4.1 Questions . . . . .	21
<b>5 Motivation of numerical modeling</b>	<b>25</b>
5.1 Scientific computing: Why numerical simulations? . . . . .	25
5.2 Differential equations and guiding questions . . . . .	26
5.3 Errors . . . . .	26
5.4 Concepts in numerical mathematics . . . . .	27
5.5 Well-posedness . . . . .	28
5.6 Which topics these notes do not cover . . . . .	28
<b>6 An extended introduction to differential equations</b>	<b>29</b>
6.1 Examples and applications of differential equations . . . . .	29
6.2 One important ODE . . . . .	34
6.3 Three important PDEs . . . . .	35
6.4 The general definition of a differential equation . . . . .	38
6.5 Boundary and initial conditions . . . . .	41
6.5.1 Types of boundary conditions . . . . .	41
6.5.2 Common traps and errors . . . . .	41
6.5.3 Example: Dependence of the numerical solution on the boundaries . . . . .	42
6.6 Weak/variational solutions versus classical solutions . . . . .	43
6.7 The challenge of numerical modeling . . . . .	43
6.8 Philosophy of numerical modeling . . . . .	44
<b>7 Finite differences for ODE initial-values problems</b>	<b>45</b>
7.1 Problem statement of an IVP (initial value problem) . . . . .	45

---

7.2	Stiff problems . . . . .	45
7.3	Well-posedness of solutions . . . . .	46
7.4	One-step schemes . . . . .	46
7.4.1	The Euler method . . . . .	46
7.4.2	Implicit schemes . . . . .	47
7.5	Numerical analysis . . . . .	48
7.5.1	The model problem . . . . .	48
7.5.2	Splitting into stability and consistency . . . . .	48
7.5.3	Stability . . . . .	49
7.5.4	Consistency / local discretization error - convergence order . . . . .	51
7.5.5	Convergence . . . . .	51
7.6	Detailed numerical tests . . . . .	53
7.6.1	Problem statement and discussion of results . . . . .	53
7.6.2	Treatment of the instability of the forward Euler method . . . . .	55
7.7	Runge-Kutta methods . . . . .	56
<b>8</b>	<b>Finite elements for PDE boundary values problems</b>	<b>59</b>
8.1	Model problem: 1D Poisson . . . . .	59
8.2	Construction of an exact solution (only possible for simple cases!) . . . . .	59
8.3	Equivalent formulations . . . . .	60
8.4	The weak form: defining a bilinear form and a linear form . . . . .	63
8.5	Finite elements in 1D . . . . .	65
8.5.1	The mesh . . . . .	65
8.5.2	Linear finite elements . . . . .	65
8.5.3	The process to construct the specific form of the shape functions . . . . .	67
8.5.4	The discrete weak form . . . . .	68
8.5.5	Evaluation of the integrals . . . . .	69
8.5.6	Definition of a finite element . . . . .	70
8.5.7	Properties of the system matrix $A$ . . . . .	71
8.5.8	Numerical test: 1D Poisson . . . . .	71
8.6	Algorithmic details . . . . .	76
8.6.1	Assembling integrals on each cell $K$ . . . . .	76
8.6.2	Example in $\mathbb{R}^5$ . . . . .	76
8.6.3	Numerical quadrature . . . . .	78
8.6.4	Details on the evaluation on the master element . . . . .	81
8.6.5	Generalization to $s$ elements . . . . .	82
8.6.6	Example: Section 8.6.2 continued using Sections 8.6.4 and 8.6.5 . . . . .	83
8.7	Quadratic finite elements: $P_2$ elements . . . . .	85
8.7.1	Algorithmic aspects . . . . .	85
8.7.2	Numerical test: 1D Poisson using quadratic FEM . . . . .	86
8.7.3	Influence of numerical quadrature . . . . .	87
8.8	Solving the linear equation system . . . . .	88
8.8.1	Overview . . . . .	88
8.8.2	Basic iterative solvers . . . . .	89
8.8.3	Conjugate gradients (a Krylov space method) . . . . .	92
8.8.4	Preconditioning . . . . .	96
8.9	Numerical tests: computational convergence analysis and solver behavior . . . . .	98
8.9.1	2D Poisson . . . . .	98
8.9.2	Numerical test: 3D . . . . .	99
8.9.3	Checking programming code and convergence analysis for linear and quadratic FEM . . . . .	99
8.9.4	Convergence analysis for 1D Poisson using linear FEM . . . . .	101
8.9.5	Iterative solver behavior . . . . .	102
<b>9</b>	<b>Combining FD and FE: Numerical discretization of the heat equation</b>	<b>103</b>
9.1	Problem . . . . .	103

---

---

9.2	Mathematical problem statement . . . . .	103
9.3	Temporal discretization . . . . .	103
9.3.1	Spatial discretization . . . . .	104
9.3.2	Evaluation of the integrals (1D in space) . . . . .	105
9.3.3	Final algorithms . . . . .	106
9.4	Numerical analysis: stability analysis . . . . .	108
9.4.1	Stability analysis for backward Euler . . . . .	109
9.4.2	Stability analysis for explicit Euler . . . . .	109
9.4.3	Numerical tests . . . . .	110
<b>10</b>	<b>Towards nonlinear problems</b>	<b>113</b>
10.1	Preface . . . . .	113
10.2	Linearization techniques . . . . .	113
10.3	Fixed-point iteration . . . . .	114
10.4	Linearization via time-lagging (example: NSE) . . . . .	114
10.4.1	Stokes linearization . . . . .	115
10.4.2	Oseen linearization . . . . .	115
10.5	Newton's method in $\mathbb{R}$ - the Newton-Raphson method . . . . .	115
10.5.1	Newton's method: overview. Going from $\mathbb{R}$ to $\mathbb{R}^n$ . . . . .	117
10.5.2	A basic algorithm for a residual-based Newton method . . . . .	117
10.5.3	Example of the basic Newton method . . . . .	118
10.5.4	Example using a Newton defect-correction scheme including line search . . . . .	119
10.6	Solving IVPs with implicit schemes . . . . .	120
<b>11</b>	<b>Computational convergence analysis</b>	<b>123</b>
11.1	Discretization error . . . . .	123
11.1.1	Relationship between $h$ and $N$ (DoFs) . . . . .	123
11.1.2	Discretization error . . . . .	124
11.1.3	Computationally-obtained convergence order: example for the spatial mesh parameter $h$ . . . . .	125
11.2	Iteration error . . . . .	125
<b>12</b>	<b>Concluding summary</b>	<b>127</b>
12.1	Summary . . . . .	127
12.2	The principles of work, study and research tasks . . . . .	127
12.3	Hints for presenting results in a presentation/talk . . . . .	128
<b>13</b>	<b>Programming codes</b>	<b>131</b>
13.1	Short comments on MATLAB / octave . . . . .	131
13.2	Code of Example 7.6 in Octave . . . . .	131
13.3	Short comments on Python . . . . .	133
13.4	Code of Example 8.5.8 in python . . . . .	133
13.5	Code for a straightforward implementation of Newton's method (Example 10.5.3) . . . . .	135
13.6	Code for a Newton defect-correction scheme including line search (Example 10.5.4) . . . . .	136
<b>Bibliography</b>		<b>139</b>
<b>Index</b>		<b>141</b>

---

## 1 Main literature

All literature given in arbitrary order!

Main literature for Part I (summer readings):

1. I.N. Bronshtein and K.A. Semendyayev and G. Musiol and H. Muehlig: Handbook of Mathematics, Springer 2007 [7].

Main literature for the class (Part II):

1. A. Quarteroni, F. Saleri, P. Gervasio: Scientific Computing with MATLAB and Octave [25] (in English).
2. G. Strang: Computational Science and Engineering [32].
3. G. Allaire: Introduction to mathematical modelling, numerical simulation, and optimization [2] (in English; original version in French).
4. M. Hanke-Bourgeois: Foundations of numerical mathematics and scientific computing [18] (in German).
5. T. Richter, T. Wick [29]: Introduction to numerical mathematics (in German; parts of the book have been translated to English in these lecture notes).

Further reading (emphasis on ODEs and PDEs):

1. P. Deuflhard and F. Bornemann: Scientific computing with ordinary differential equations, Springer, 2002 (in English; original version in German) [12].
2. G. Allaire, F. Alouges: Analyse variationnelle des équations aux dérivées partielles [3] (in French).
3. C. Johnson 1987; Numerical solution of partial differential equations by the finite element method [22] (in English; original version in Swedish)
4. P. Ciarlet 1987: The finite element method for elliptic problems [10] (in English)
5. T. Wick; Numerical methods for partial differential equations, Lecture notes, LUH, May 2018, available online <https://www.ifam.uni-hannover.de/1562.html> (in English)



PART I  
Summer readings



## 2 Basics in calculus and linear algebra (summer readings)

The summer readings prepare for the class and the project work in autumn. The basics of arithmetics, functions, calculus and linear algebra are recapitulated.

### 2.1 Literature for the summer readings

We recommend a classical world-renowned summary by Bronshtein et al. [7]: Handbook of Mathematics.

IMPORTANT: In case you have concerns, problems or questions in getting a copy of Bronshtein [7], please contact me via [thomas.wick@polytechnique.edu](mailto:thomas.wick@polytechnique.edu)

### 2.2 Mathematical symbols

This section is optional, but likely to be useful:

1. Bronshtein at the very end, page 1160 ff: Mathematical Symbols.

### 2.3 Arithmetic

For arithmetic, please take Bronshtein and study:

1. Bronshtein Section 1.1 (Elementary rules for calculations).
2. Bronshtein Section 1.2 (Finite series).

### 2.4 Differential and integral calculus

For calculus, please take Bronshtein and study:

1. Bronshtein Chapter 2: Functions.
2. Bronshtein Chapter 6: Differentiation.
3. Bronshtein Chapter 7: Infinite Series.
4. Bronshtein Chapter 8: Integral Calculus.

### 2.5 Linear algebra

For linear algebra, please study in Bronshtein:

1. Bronshtein Chapter 4: Linear algebra.



### 3 Notation (summer readings)

In this chapter, we collect most parts of the notation and some important results from linear algebra, analysis, vector and tensor analysis, necessary for numerical mathematics.

#### 3.1 Domains

We consider open, bounded domains  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^d$  where  $d = 1, 2, 3$  is the dimension. The boundary is denoted by  $\partial\Omega$ . The outer **normal vector** with respect to (w.r.t.) to  $\partial\Omega$  is  $n$ . We assume that  $\Omega$  is sufficiently smooth (i.e., a Lipschitz domain or domain with Lipschitz boundary) such that the normal  $n$  can be defined. What also works for most of our theory are convex, polyhedral domains with finite corners. For specific definitions of nonsmooth domains, we refer to the literature, e.g., [16].

#### 3.2 Independent variables

A point in  $\mathbb{R}^d$  is denoted by

$$x = (x_1, \dots, x_d).$$

The variable for ‘time’ is denoted by  $t$ . The euclidian scalar product is denoted by  $(x, y) = x \cdot y = \sum_{i=1}^d x_i y_i$ .

#### 3.3 Function, vector and tensor notation

Functions are denoted by

$$u := u(x)$$

if they only depend on the spatial variable  $x = (x_1, \dots, x_d)$ . If they depend on time and space, they are denoted by

$$u = u(t, x).$$

Usually in physics or engineering vector-valued and tensor-valued quantities are denoted in bold font size or with the help of arrows. Unfortunately in mathematics, this notation is only sometimes adopted. We continue this crime and do not distinguish scalar, vector, and tensor-valued functions. Thus for points in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  we write:

$$x := (x, y, z) = \mathbf{x} = \vec{x}.$$

Similar for functions from a space  $u : \mathbb{R}^3 \supseteq U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$ :

$$u := (u_x, u_y, u_z) = \mathbf{u} = \vec{u}.$$

And also similar for tensor-valued functions (which often have a bar or two bars under the tensor quantity) as for example the Cauchy stress tensor  $\sigma_f \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  of a fluid:

$$\underline{\sigma}_f := \underline{\sigma}_f = \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_{xx} & \sigma_{xy} & \sigma_{xz} \\ \sigma_{yx} & \sigma_{yy} & \sigma_{yz} \\ \sigma_{zx} & \sigma_{zy} & \sigma_{zz} \end{pmatrix}.$$

#### 3.4 Partial derivatives

We frequently use:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \partial_x u$$

and

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \partial_t u$$

and

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t \partial t} = \partial_t^2 u$$

and

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} = \partial_{xy} u$$

### 3.5 Multiindex notation

For a general description of ODEs and PDEs the multiindex notation is commonly used.

- A multiindex is a vector  $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)$ , where each component  $\alpha_i \in \mathbb{N}_0$ . The order is

$$|\alpha| = \alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_n.$$

- For a given multiindex we define the partial derivative:

$$D^\alpha u(x) := \partial_{x_1}^{\alpha_1} \cdots \partial_{x_n}^{\alpha_n} u$$

- If  $k \in \mathbb{N}_0$ , we define the set of all partial derivatives of order  $k$ :

$$D^k u(x) := \{D^\alpha u(x) : |\alpha| = k\}.$$

**Example 3.1.** Let the problem dimension  $n = 3$ . Then,  $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3)$ . For instance, let  $\alpha = (2, 0, 1)$ . Then  $|\alpha| = 3$  and  $D^\alpha u(x) = \partial_x^2 \partial_z^1 u(x)$ .

### 3.6 Gradient, divergence, trace, Laplace, rotation

Well-known in physics, it is convenient to work with the **nabla-operator** to define derivative expressions. The gradient of a single-valued function  $v : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  reads:

$$\nabla v = \begin{pmatrix} \partial_1 v \\ \vdots \\ \partial_n v \end{pmatrix}.$$

The gradient of a vector-valued function  $v : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  is called **Jacobian matrix** and reads:

$$\nabla v = \begin{pmatrix} \partial_1 v_1 & \dots & \partial_n v_1 \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \partial_1 v_m & \dots & \partial_n v_m \end{pmatrix}.$$

The divergence is defined for vector-valued functions  $v : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ :

$$\operatorname{div} v := \nabla \cdot v := \nabla \cdot \begin{pmatrix} v_1 \\ \vdots \\ v_n \end{pmatrix} = \sum_{k=1}^n \partial_k v_k.$$

The divergence for a tensor  $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  is defined as:

$$\nabla \cdot \sigma = \left( \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{\partial \sigma_{ij}}{\partial x_j} \right)_{1 \leq i \leq n}.$$

The trace of a matrix  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  is defined as

$$\operatorname{tr}(A) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ii}.$$

**Definition 3.2** (Laplace operator). The Laplace operator of a two-times continuously differentiable scalar-valued function  $u : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is defined as

$$\Delta u = \sum_{k=1}^n \partial_{kk} u.$$

**Definition 3.3.** For a vector-valued function  $u : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ , we define the Laplace operator component-wise as

$$\Delta u = \Delta \begin{pmatrix} u_1 \\ \vdots \\ u_m \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \sum_{k=1}^n \partial_{kk} u_1 \\ \vdots \\ \sum_{k=1}^n \partial_{kk} u_m \end{pmatrix}.$$

Let us also introduce the **cross product** of two vectors  $u, v \in \mathbb{R}^3$ :

$$\begin{pmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \\ u_3 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ v_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} u_2 v_3 - u_3 v_2 \\ u_3 v_1 - u_1 v_3 \\ u_1 v_2 - u_2 v_1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

With the help of the cross product, we can define the **rotation**:

$$\text{rot } v = \nabla \times v = \begin{pmatrix} \partial_x \\ \partial_y \\ \partial_z \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ v_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \partial_y v_3 - \partial_z v_2 \\ \partial_z v_1 - \partial_x v_3 \\ \partial_x v_2 - \partial_y v_1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

### 3.7 Invariants of a matrix

The principal invariants of a matrix  $A$  are the coefficients of the characteristic polynomial  $\det(A - \lambda I)$ . A matrix  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  has three principal invariants; namely  $i_A = (i_1(A), i_2(A), i_3(A))$  with

$$\det(\lambda I - A) = \lambda^3 - i_1(A)\lambda^2 + i_2(A)\lambda - i_3(A).$$

Let  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3$  be the eigenvalues of  $A$ . Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} i_1(A) &= \text{tr}(A) = \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \lambda_3, \\ i_2(A) &= \frac{1}{2}(\text{tr } A)^2 - \text{tr}(A)^2 = \lambda_1 \lambda_2 + \lambda_1 \lambda_3 + \lambda_2 \lambda_3, \\ i_3(A) &= \det(A) = \lambda_1 \lambda_2 \lambda_3. \end{aligned}$$

**Remark 3.4.** If two different matrices have the same principal invariants, they also have the same eigenvalues.

**Remark 3.5** (Cayley-Hamilton). Every second-order tensor (i.e., a matrix) satisfies its own characteristic equation:

$$A^3 - i_1 A^2 + i_2 A - i_3 I = 0.$$

### 3.8 Vector spaces

Let  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}$ . In fact,  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{C}$  would work as well and any general field. But we restrict our attention in the entire lecture notes to real numbers  $\mathbb{R}$ .

**Definition 3.6** (Vector space). A **vector space** or **linear space** over a field  $\mathbb{K}$  is a nonempty set  $X$  (later often denotes by  $V, U$  or also  $W$ ). The space  $X$  contains elements  $x_1, x_2, \dots$  which are the so-called **vectors**. We define two algebraic operations:

- Vector addition:  $x + y$  for  $x, y \in X$ .
- Multiplication of vectors with scalars:  $\alpha x$  for  $x \in X$  and  $\alpha \in \mathbb{K}$ .

These operations satisfy the usual laws that they are commutative, associative, and satisfy distributive laws.

### 3.9 Normed spaces

Let  $X$  be a linear space. The mapping  $\|\cdot\| : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a **norm** if

- i)  $\|x\| \geq 0 \quad \forall x \in X$  (Positivity)
- ii)  $\|x\| = 0 \Leftrightarrow x = 0$  (Definiteness)
- iii)  $\|\alpha x\| = |\alpha| \|x\|, \quad \alpha \in \mathbb{K}$  (Homogeneity)
- iv)  $\|x + y\| \leq \|x\| + \|y\|$  (Triangle inequality)

A space  $X$  is a normed space when the norm properties are satisfied. If condition ii) is not satisfied, the mapping is called a **semi-norm** and denoted by  $|x|_X$  for  $x \in X$ .

**Definition 3.7.** Let  $\|\cdot\|$  be a norm on  $X$ . Then  $\{X, \|\cdot\|\}$  is called a (real) normed space.

**Example 3.8.** We provide some examples:

1.  $\mathbb{R}^n$  with the euclidian norm  $\|x\| = (\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2)^{1/2}$  is a normed space.

2. Let  $\Omega := [a, b]$ . The space of continuous functions  $C(\Omega)$  endowed with the **maximum norm**

$$\|u\|_{C(\Omega)} = \max_{x \in \Omega} |u(x)|$$

is a normed space.

3. The space  $\{C(\Omega), \|\cdot\|_{L^2}\}$  with

$$\|u\|_{L^2} = \left( \int_{\Omega} u(x)^2 dx \right)^{1/2}$$

is a normed space.

**Definition 3.9.** Two norms are equivalent if converging sequences have the same limits.

**Proposition 3.10.** Two norms  $\|\cdot\|_A, \|\cdot\|_B$  on  $X$  are equivalent if and only if there exist two constants  $C_1, C_2 > 0$  such that

$$C_1 \|x\|_A \leq \|x\|_B \leq C_2 \|x\|_A \quad \forall x \in X$$

The limits are the same.

*Proof.* See e.g., [35]. □

**Remark 3.11.** This statements has indeed some immediate consequences. For instance, often convergence of an iterative scheme is proven with the help of the Banach fixed point scheme in which the contraction constant  $q$  must be smaller than 1. It is important that not all norms may satisfy  $q < 1$ , but when different norms are equivalent and we pick one that satisfy  $q < 1$ , we can proof convergence.

### 3.10 Linear mappings

Let  $\{U, \|\cdot\|_U\}$  and  $\{V, \|\cdot\|_V\}$  be normed spaces over  $\mathbb{R}$ .

**Definition 3.12** (Linear mappings). A mapping  $T : U \rightarrow V$  is called **linear** or **linear operator** when

$$T(u) = T(au_1 + bu_2) = aT(u_1) + bT(u_2),$$

for  $u = au_1 + bu_2$  and for  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ .

**Example 3.13.** We discuss two examples:

1. Let  $T(u) = \Delta u$ . Then:

$$T(au_1 + bu_2) = \Delta(au_1 + bu_2) = a\Delta u_1 + b\Delta u_2 = aT(u_1) + bT(u_2).$$

Thus,  $T$  is linear.

2. Let  $T(u) = (u \cdot \nabla)u$ . Then:

$$T(au_1 + bu_2) = ((au_1 + bu_2) \cdot \nabla)(au_1 + bu_2) \neq a(u_1 \cdot \nabla)u_1 + b(u_2 \cdot \nabla)u_2 = aT(u_1) + bT(u_2).$$

Here,  $T$  is nonlinear.

**Definition 3.14** (Linear functional). A mapping  $T : U \rightarrow V$  with  $V = \mathbb{R}$  is called **linear functional**.

**Definition 3.15.** A mapping  $T : U \rightarrow V$  is called **continuous** when

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} u_n = u \Rightarrow \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} Tu_n = Tu.$$

**Definition 3.16.** A linear operator  $T : U \rightarrow V$  is called **bounded**, when the following estimate holds true:

$$\|Tu\|_V \leq c\|u\|_U.$$

**Theorem 3.17.** A linear operator is bounded if and only if it is continuous.

*Proof.* See [35], Satz II.1.2. □

**Definition 3.18.** Let  $T : U \rightarrow V$  be a linear and continuous operator. The norm of  $T$  is defined as

$$\|T\| = \sup_{\|u\|_U=1} \|Tu\|_V.$$

Since a linear  $T$  is bounded (when continuous) there exists  $\|Tu\|_V \leq c\|u\|_U$  for all  $u \in U$ . The smallest number for  $c$  is  $c = \|T\|$ .

**Definition 3.19.** The linear space of all linear and bounded operators from  $U$  to  $V$  is denoted by

$$L(U, V).$$

The norm of  $L(U, V)$  is the operator norm  $\|T\|$ .

**Definition 3.20** (Dual space). The linear space of all linear, bounded functionals on  $U$  (see Def. 3.14) is the dual space, denoted by  $U^*$ , i.e.,

$$U^* = L(U, \mathbb{R}).$$

For  $f \in U^*$ , the norm is given by:

$$\|f\|_{U^*} = \sup_{\|u\|_U=1} |f(u)|.$$

The dual space is always a Banach space; see again [35].

### 3.11 Little o and big O - the Landau symbols

**Definition 3.21** (Landau symbols). (i) Let  $g(n)$  a function with  $g \rightarrow \infty$  for  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . Then  $f \in O(g)$  if and only if when

$$\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{f(n)}{g(n)} \right| < \infty$$

and  $f \in o(g)$  if and only if

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{f(n)}{g(n)} \right| = 0.$$

(ii) Let  $g(h)$  a function with  $g(h) \rightarrow 0$  for  $h \rightarrow 0$ . As before, we define  $f \in O(g)$  and  $f \in o(g)$ :

$$\limsup_{h \rightarrow 0} \left| \frac{f(h)}{g(h)} \right| < \infty \Leftrightarrow f \in O(g),$$

and

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \left| \frac{f(h)}{g(h)} \right| = 0 \Leftrightarrow f \in o(g).$$

(iii) Specifically:

$$\limsup_{h \rightarrow 0} |f(h)| < \infty \Leftrightarrow f \in O(1),$$

and

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} |f(h)| = 0 \Leftrightarrow f \in o(1).$$

Often, the notation  $f = O(g)$  is used rather than  $f \in O(g)$  and similarly  $f = o(g)$  rather than  $f \in o(g)$ .

**Example 3.22.** Five examples:

1.  $\frac{1}{x} = o(\frac{1}{x^2}) \quad (x \rightarrow 0)$ ,
2.  $\frac{1}{x^2} = o(\frac{1}{x}) \quad (|x| \rightarrow \infty)$ ,
3.  $e^{-x} = o(x^{-26}) \quad (x \rightarrow \infty)$ .
4. Let  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$  and  $h \rightarrow 0$ . We write

$$h = o(\varepsilon)$$

when

$$\frac{h}{\varepsilon} \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{for } h \rightarrow 0, \quad \varepsilon \rightarrow 0,$$

which means that  $h$  tends faster to 0 than  $\varepsilon$ .

5. Let us assume that we have the error estimate (see sections on the numerical analysis)

$$\|y(t_n) - y_n\|_2 = O(k).$$

Here the  $O$  notation means nothing else than

$$\frac{\|y(t_n) - y_n\|_2}{k} \rightarrow C \quad \text{for } k \rightarrow 0.$$

Here the fraction converges to a constant  $C$  (and not necessarily 0!), which illustrates that  $O(\cdot)$  convergence is weaker than  $o(\cdot)$  convergence. On the other hand, this should not yield the wrong conclusion that  $\|y(t_n) - y_n\|_2$  may not tend to zero. Since  $k \rightarrow 0$ , also  $\|y(t_n) - y_n\|_2 \rightarrow 0$  must hold necessarily.

### 3.12 Taylor expansion

The Taylor series of a function  $f \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$  developed at a point  $a \neq x$  reads:

$$T(f(x)) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(j)}(a)}{j!} (x-a)^j.$$

### 3.13 Transformation of integrals: substitution rule / change of variables

One of the most important formulas in continuum mechanics and variational formulations is the substitution rule that allows to transform integrals from one domain to another.

In 1D it holds:

**Proposition 3.23** (Substitution rule in 1D). *Let  $I = [a, b]$  be given. To transform this interval to a new interval, we use a mapping  $T(I) = [\alpha, \beta]$  with  $T(a) = \alpha$  and  $T(b) = \beta$ . If  $T \in C^1$  (a continuously differentiable mapping) and monotonically increasing (i.e.,  $T' > 0$ ), we have the transformation rule:*

$$\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} f(y) dy = \int_{T(a)}^{T(b)} f(y) dy = \int_a^b f(T(x)) T'(x) dx.$$

*Proof.* Any analysis book. Here Analysis 2, Rolf Rannacher, Heidelberg University [27].  $\square$

**Remark 3.24.** In case that  $T' < 0$  the previous proposition still holds true, but with a negative sign:

$$\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} f(y) dy = \int_{T(b)}^{T(a)} f(y) dy = - \int_{T(a)}^{T(b)} f(y) dy = \int_a^b f(T(x)) (-T'(x)) dx.$$

For both cases with  $T' \neq 0$  the formula works and finally yields:

**Theorem 3.25.** Let  $I = [a, b]$  be given. To transform this interval to a new interval  $[\alpha, \beta]$ , we employ a mapping  $T$ . If  $T \in C^1$  (a continuously differentiable mapping) and  $T' \neq 0$ , it holds:

$$\int_{T(I)} f(y) dy := \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} f(y) dy = \int_a^b f(T(x)) |T'(x)| dx =: \int_I f(T(x)) |T'(x)| dx.$$

*Proof.* Any analysis book. Here Analysis 2, Rolf Rannacher, Heidelberg University [27].  $\square$

**Remark 3.26.** We observe the relation between the integration increments:

$$dy = |T'(x)| dx.$$

**Example 3.27.** Let  $T$  be a affin-linear transformation defined as

$$T(x) = ax + b.$$

Then,

$$dy = |a|dx.$$

In higher dimensions, we have the following result of the substitution rule (also known as **change of variables** under the integral):

**Theorem 3.28.** Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be an open, measurable, domain. Let the function  $T : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be of class  $C^1$ , one-to-one (injective) and Lipschitz-continuous. Then:

- The domain  $\hat{\Omega} := T(\Omega)$  is measurable.
- The function  $f(T(\cdot))|detT'(\cdot)| : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is (Riemann)-integrable.
- For all measurable subdomains  $M \subset \Omega$  it holds the substitution rule:

$$\int_{T(M)} f(y) dy = \int_M f(T(x))|detT'(x)| dx,$$

and in particular as well for  $M = \Omega$ .

*Proof.* Any analysis book. See e.g., [27] or [23][Chapter 9].  $\square$

**Remark 3.29.** In continuum mechanics,  $T'$  is the so-called **deformation gradient** and  $J := det(T')$ , the **volume ratio**.

### 3.14 Gauss-Green theorem / Divergence theorem

The Gauss-Green theorem or often known as **divergence theorem**, is one of the most useful formulas in continuum mechanics and numerical analysis.

Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  an bounded, open domain and  $\partial\Omega$  of class  $C^1$ .

**Theorem 3.30** (Gauss-Green theorem / Divergence theorem). Suppose that  $u := u(x) \in C^1(\bar{\Omega})$  with  $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ . Then:

$$\int_{\Omega} u_{x_i} dx = \int_{\partial\Omega} u n_i ds, \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, n.$$

In compact notation, we have

$$\int_{\Omega} \operatorname{div} u dx = \int_{\partial\Omega} u \cdot n ds$$

for each vector field  $u \in C^1(\bar{\Omega}; \mathbb{R}^n)$ .

*Proof.* The proof is nontrivial. See for example [23].  $\square$

### 3.15 Integration by parts and Green's formulae

One of the most important formulae in applied mathematics, physics and continuum mechanics is **integration by parts**.

From the divergence Theorem 3.30, we obtain immediately:

**Proposition 3.31** (Integration by parts). *Let  $u, v \in C^1(\bar{\Omega})$ . Then:*

$$\int_{\Omega} u_{x_i} v \, dx = - \int_{\Omega} u v_{x_i} \, dx + \int_{\partial\Omega} u v n_i \, ds, \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, n.$$

In compact notation:

$$\int_{\Omega} \nabla u v \, dx = - \int_{\Omega} u \nabla v \, dx + \int_{\partial\Omega} u v n \, ds.$$

*Proof.* Apply the divergence theorem to  $uv$ . Exercise.  $\square$

We obtain now some further results, which are very useful, but all are based directly on the integration by parts. For this reason, it is more important to know the divergence theorem and integration by parts formula.

**Proposition 3.32** (Green's formulas). *Let  $u, v \in C^2(\bar{\Omega})$ . Then:*

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Omega} \Delta u \, dx &= \int_{\partial\Omega} \partial_n u \, ds, \\ \int_{\Omega} \nabla u \cdot \nabla v \, dx &= - \int_{\Omega} \Delta u v \, dx + \int_{\partial\Omega} v \partial_n u \, ds. \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* Apply integration parts.  $\square$

**Proposition 3.33** (Green's formula in 1D). *Let  $\Omega = (a, b)$ . Let  $u, v \in C^2(\bar{\Omega})$ . Then:*

$$\int_{\Omega} u'(x) \cdot v'(x) \, dx = - \int_{\Omega} u''(x) v(x) \, dx + [u'(x)v(x)]_{x=a}^{x=b}$$

*Proof.* Apply integration parts.  $\square$

## 4 Quiz (finishing the summer readings)

The following questions may serve as a little reminder to test what we have learned during the summer readings.

### 4.1 Questions

1. Which programming languages do you know?
2. Which programming languages have you used so far?
3. What is a derivative of a function  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ? Give an example.
4. What is a partial derivative? Give an example.
5. Differentiate  $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^3$  with respect to  $y$ .
6. Differentiate  $f(x, y) = x^2y^3$  with respect to  $x$  and  $y$ .
7. What is the Hessian matrix?
8. What does  $\Delta u$  for a function  $u : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  mean?
9. How is the divergence operator defined and what is its physical meaning?
10. What is  $\nabla \cdot v$  for a function  $v : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ ?
11. What is a norm? Why do we need a norm? Can you define the defining properties of a norm?
12. In case you have heard about ‘numerical modeling’ or ‘scientific computing’: what is your understanding of these terminologies?
13. Have you had classes on differential equations so far?
14. Did you get to know differential equations in some other classes, e.g., engineering classes? If yes, can you give an example?
15. What is a sequence of numbers (e.g., give an example) and what is convergence?
16. Do you know how to solve a linear equation system  $Ax = b$  with  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}, x \in \mathbb{R}^n, b \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ?
17. Solve (by hand) the following linear equation system:

$$\begin{aligned} x + 2y + z &= 4 \\ -2x + y + 3z &= 7 \\ 2x - 3y - 2z &= -10 \end{aligned}$$

Formulate first  $A, x$  and  $b$  and compute then the solution of  $Ax = b$ .

18. Evaluate  $\int_{-2}^3 x^3 dx$
19. What is the substitution rule (in 1D and higher dimensions)?
20. What is integration by parts (in 1D and higher dimensions)?
21. Evaluate the concrete points  $x_j$  for  $n = 4$  using the following definition:

$$x_j = jh, \quad h = \frac{1}{n+1}, \quad 0 \leq j \leq n+1, \quad h = x_{j+1} - x_j.$$

22. What is a Taylor expansion? Why is Taylor useful?
23. What is a metric space? Give an example?

24. How is the space  $C[a, b]$  defined?
25. Define the triangle inequality. How is Young's inequality defined?
26. What is the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality?
27. Do you know what a Cauchy sequence is?
28. What is a complex number? Give an example.
29. (only with a computer) Implement in your preferred programming language the phrase 'Hello MAP 502', which is then printed on the screen.
30. (only with a computer) Implement the calculation  $1 + 5$  in your preferred programming language and print the result on the screen.

31. Evaluate

$$\int_0^{\pi/4} x^3 \cdot \cos(x) dx$$

32. What is the limit of the sequence

$$(1 + \frac{x}{n})^n ?$$

PART II  
Class on numerical modeling

4 QUIZ (FINISHING THE SUMMER READINGS)

## 5 Motivation of numerical modeling

### 5.1 Scientific computing: Why numerical simulations?

The key question is why we need numerical simulations? The answer is that in fact in recent decades thanks to the developments of computers, a third pillar of science has been established that sits between experiments and theory: **Numerical Modeling**. Numerical modeling is a part of **scientific computing**. Scientific computing comprises three main fields:

- **Mathematical modeling** and analysis of physical, biological, chemical, economical, financial processes, and so forth;
- Development of reliable and efficient **numerical methods** and algorithms;
- Implementation of these algorithms into a **software**.

All these steps work in a feed-back manner and the different subtasks interact with each other. It is in fact the third above aspect, namely *software and computers*, who helped to establish this third category of science. Thus, a new branch of mathematics, *numerical mathematics/scientific computing*, has been established. This kind of mathematics is experimental like experiments in physics/chemistry/biology.

Therefore, numerical modeling offers to investigate research fields that have partially not been addressable. Why? On the one hand experiments are often too expensive, too far away (Mars, Moon, astronomy in general), the scales are too small (nano-scale for example); or experiments are simply too dangerous. On the other hand, mathematical theory or the explicit solution of an (ambitious) engineering problem in an analytical manner is often impossible!

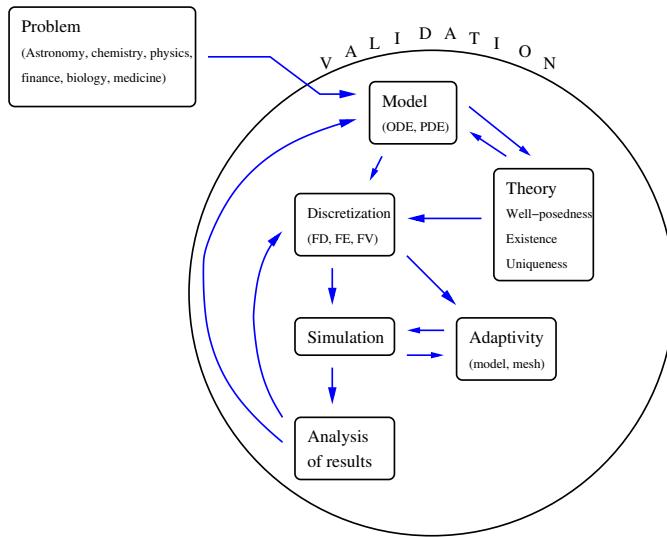


Figure 1: The third pillar of science between theory and experiments: scientific computing.

Thanks to progress in computer technology, scientific computing (or numerical modeling or computational science) plays a major role in nowadays research. However, there is a great danger that research becomes superficial because it sounds easy just to push the button of a computer, run the software/program, and everything is solved. A careful analysis of the underlying algorithms and the obtained solutions is indispensable. Here, it is in particular an advantage to activate imagination and physical sense. If something is weird in scientific computing, it can often already be identified by just looking into the graphical solution and double-checking physical plausibility. On the other hand, a certain depth in theory is helpful as well to judge simulation results. Thus a peculiar challenge working in this field is that an intrinsic interdisciplinary motivation and education must be present by these researchers.

## 5.2 Differential equations and guiding questions

The goal of this lecture is to restrict our focus to **differential equations**. These have endless applications in science and engineering and serve perfectly to provide an idea of numerical modeling. Let us first roughly define the meaning of a differential equation:

**Definition 5.1.** *A differential equation is a mathematical equation that relates the function with its derivatives.*

Differential equations can be split into two classes:

**Definition 5.2** (Ordinary differential equation (ODE) ). *An ordinary differential equation (ODE) is an equation (or equation system) involving an unknown function of one independent variable and certain of its derivatives.*

**Definition 5.3** (Partial differential equation (PDE) ). *A partial differential equation (PDE) is an equation (or equation system) involving an unknown function of two or more variables and certain of its partial derivatives.*

A solution  $u$  of a differential equation is in most cases (except for simple academic test cases in which a manufactured solution can be constructed) computed with the help of discretization schemes generating a sequence of approximate solutions  $\{u_h\}_{h \rightarrow 0}$ . Here  $h$  is the so-called discretization parameter. For  $h \rightarrow 0$  we (hopefully) approach the continuous solution  $u$ .

Important questions are

- What kind of discretization scheme shall we use?
- How do we design algorithms to compute  $u_h$ ?
- Can we proof that these algorithms really work?
- Are they robust and, ideally, efficient?
- How far is  $u_h$  away from  $u$  in a certain (error) norm?
- The discretized systems (to obtain  $u_h$ ) are often large with a huge number of unknowns: how do we solve these linear equation systems?
- What is the computational cost?

## 5.3 Errors

In order to realize these algorithmic questions, we go ahead and implement them in a software (for instance Matlab/octave, python, fortran, C++, Java) using a computer. Here, three major error sources that need to be addressed:

- The set of numbers is finite and a calculation is limited by machine precision, which results in **round-off errors**.
- The memory of a computer (or cluster) is finite and thus functions and equations can only be represented through approximations. Thus, continuous information has to be represented through discrete information, which results in investigating so-called **discretization errors**.
- All further simplifications of a numerical algorithm (in order to solve the discrete problem), with the final goal to reduce the computational time, are so-called **systematic errors**. One example is the stopping criterion after how many steps an iteration is stopped.

Finally, there are **model errors** such as:

- In order to make a ‘quick guess’ of a possible solution and to start development of an algorithm to address at a later stage a difficult problem, often complicated (nonlinear) differential equations are reduced to simple (in most cases linear) versions, which results in the so-called **model error**.

- **Data errors:** the data (e.g., input data, boundary conditions, parameters) are finally obtained from experimental data and may be inaccurate themselves.

It is very important to understand that we **never can avoid** all these errors. The important aspect is to **control** these errors and to provide answers if these errors are sufficiently big to influence the interpretation of numerical simulations or if they can be assumed to be small. A big branch of numerical mathematics is to derive error estimates that allow to predict about the size of arising errors.

## 5.4 Concepts in numerical mathematics

In [29], we defined seven concepts that are very characteristic for numerical modeling and will frequently encounter us in the forthcoming chapters:

1. **Approximation:** since analytical solutions are not possible to achieve as we just learned in the previous section, solutions are obtained by **numerical approximations**.
2. **Convergence:** is a qualitative expression that tells us when members  $a_n$  of a sequence  $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  are sufficiently close to a limit  $a$ . In numerical mathematics this limit is often the solution that we are looking for.
3. **Order of convergence:** While in analysis we are often interested in the convergence itself, in numerical mathematics we must pay attention how long it takes until a numerical solution has sufficient accuracy. The longer a simulation takes, the more time and more energy (electricity to run the computer, air conditioning of servers, etc.) are consumed. Therefore, we are heavily interested in developing fast algorithms. In order to judge whether a algorithm is fast or not we have to determine the order of convergence.
4. **Errors:** Numerical mathematics can be considered as the branch ‘mathematics of errors’. What does this mean? Numerical modeling is not wrong, inexact or non-precise! Since we cut sequences after a final number of steps or accept sufficiently accurate solutions obtained from our software, we need to say how well this numerical solution the (unknown) exact solution approximates. In other words, we need to determine the error, which can arise in various forms as we discussed in the previous section.
5. **Error estimation:** This is one of the biggest branches in numerical mathematics. We need to derive error formulae to judge the outcome of our numerical simulations and to measure the difference of the numerical solution and the (unknown) exact solution in a certain norm.
6. **Efficiency:** In general we can say, the higher the convergence order of an algorithm is, the more efficient our algorithm is. Therefore, we obtain faster the numerical solution to a given problem. But numerical efficiency is not automatically related to resource-effective computing. For instance, developing a parallel code using MPI (message passing interface) will definitely yield in less CPU (central processing unit) time a numerical solution. However, if a parallel machine does need less electricity (and thus less money) than a sequential desktop machine/code is a priori unclear.
7. **Stability:** Despite being the last concept, in most developments, this is the very first step to check. How robust is our algorithm against different model and physical parameters? Is the algorithm stable with respect to different input data? This condition relates in the broadest sense to the third condition of Hadamard defined in Section 5.5.

## 5.5 Well-posedness

The concept of well-posedness is very general and in fact very simple:

- The problem under consideration has a solution;
- This solution is unique;
- The solution depends continuously on the problem data.

The first condition is immediately clear. The second condition is also obvious but often difficult to meet - and in fact many physical processes do not have unique solutions. The last condition says if a variation of the input data (right hand side, boundary values, initial conditions) vary only a little bit, then also the (unique) solution should only vary a bit.

**Remark 5.4.** *Problems in which one of the three conditions is violated are **ill-posed**.*

## 5.6 Which topics these notes do not cover

These notes do not cover other important fields of numerical modeling such as:

- Interpolation and approximation (however they appear implicitly e.g., by approximating differential equations in terms of difference quotients);
- Numerical integration/quadrature (short remarks exist though);
- Numerical schemes for orthogonalization (such as Gram-Schmidt);
- Numerical computation of eigenvalue problems.

These topics can be found, for instance, in the literature provided at the beginning in Section 1.

## 6 An extended introduction to differential equations

After having setup the mathematical basics, we turn our focus now onto the main aim of this class: differential equations. For a summary, we also refer (again) to Bronshtein [7].

### 6.1 Examples and applications of differential equations

We start with some examples:

- An ODE example (initial value problem). Let us compute the growth of a species (for example human beings) with a very simple (and finally not that realistic) model. But this shows that reality can be represented to some extend at least by simple models, but that continuous comparisons with other data is also necessary. Furthermore, this also shows that mathematical modeling often starts with a simple equation and is then continuously further augmented with further terms and coefficients. In the final end we arrive at complicated formulae.

To get started, let us assume that the population number is  $y = y(t)$  at time  $t$ . Furthermore, we assume constant growth  $g$  and mortalities rates  $m$ , respectively. In a short time frame  $dt$  we have a relative increase of

$$\frac{dy}{y} = (g - m)dt$$

of the population. Re-arranging and taking the limit  $dt \rightarrow 0$  yields:

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{dy}{dt} = (g - m)y$$

and thus

$$y' = (g - m)y.$$

For this ordinary differential equation (ODE), we can even explicitly compute the solution:

$$y(t) = c \exp((g - m)(t - t_0)).$$

This can be achieved with separation of variables:

$$y' = \frac{dy}{dt} = (g - m)y \quad (1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \int \frac{dy}{y} = \int_{t_0}^t (g - m)dt \quad (2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \ln|y| + C = (g - m)(t - t_0) \quad (3)$$

$$\Rightarrow y = \exp[C] \cdot \exp[(g - m)(t - t_0)] \quad (4)$$

In order to work with this ODE and to compute the future development of the species we need an initial value at some starting point  $t_0$ :

$$y(t_0) = y_0.$$

With this value, we can further work to determine the constant  $\exp(C)$ :

$$y(t_0) = \exp(C) \exp[(g - m)(t_0 - t_0)] = \exp(C) = y_0. \quad (5)$$

Let us say in the year  $t_0 = 2011$  there have been two members of this species:  $y(2011) = 2$ . Supposing a growth rate of 25 per cent per year yields  $g = 0.25$ . Let us say  $m = 0$  - nobody will die. In the following we compute two estimates of the future evolution of this species: for the year  $t = 2014$  and  $t = 2022$ . We first obtain:

$$y(2014) = 2 \exp(0.25 * (2014 - 2011)) = 4.117 \approx 4.$$

Thus, four members of this species exist after three years. Secondly, we want to give a ‘long term’ estimate for the year  $t = 2022$  and calculate:

$$y(2022) = 2 \exp(0.25 * (2022 - 2011)) = 31.285 \approx 31.$$

In fact, this species has an increase of 29 members within 11 years. If you translate this to human beings, we observe that the formula works quite well for a short time range but becomes somewhat unrealistic for long-term estimates though.

- Laplace’s equation (boundary value problem). This equation has several applications, e.g., Fick’s law of diffusion or heat conduction (temporal diffusion) or the deflection of a solid membrane:

**Formulation 6.1** (Laplace problem / Poisson problem). *Let  $\Omega$  be an open set. The Laplace problem reads:*

$$-\Delta u = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega.$$

The Poisson problem reads:

$$-\Delta u = f \quad \text{in } \Omega.$$

The physical interpretation is as follows. Let  $u$  denote the density of some quantity, for instance concentration or temperature, in equilibrium. If  $G$  is any smooth region  $G \subset \Omega$ , the flux of  $u$  through the boundary  $\partial G$  is zero:

$$\int_{\partial G} F \cdot n \, dx = 0. \tag{6}$$

Here  $F$  denotes the flux density and  $n$  the outer normal vector. Gauss’ divergence theorem yields:

$$\int_{\partial G} F \cdot n \, dx = \int_G \nabla \cdot F \, dx = 0.$$

Since this integral relation holds for arbitrary  $G$ , we obtain

$$\nabla \cdot F = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega. \tag{7}$$

Now we need a second assumption (or better a relation) between the flux and the quantity  $u$ . In many situations it is reasonable to assume that the flux is proportional to the negative gradient  $-\nabla u$  of the quantity  $u$ . For instance, the rate at which energy ‘flows’ (or diffuses) as heat from a warm body to a colder body is a function of the temperature difference. The larger the temperature difference, the larger the diffusion. We consequently obtain as further relation:

$$F = -\nabla u.$$

Plugging into the Equation (7) yields:

$$\nabla \cdot F = \nabla \cdot (-\nabla u) = -\nabla \cdot (\nabla u) = -\Delta u = 0.$$

This is the simplest derivation one can make. Adding a constant (material) parameter would yield:

$$\nabla \cdot F = \nabla \cdot (-a \nabla u) = -\nabla \cdot (a \nabla u) = -a \Delta u = 0.$$

And adding a nonconstant and spatially dependent material further yields:

$$\nabla \cdot F = \nabla \cdot (-a(x) \nabla u) = -\nabla \cdot (a(x) \nabla u) = 0.$$

In this last equation, we do not obtain any more the classical Laplace equation but a diffusion equation in divergence form.

- In this next example let us again consider some concentration, but now a time dependent situation, which brings us to a first-order hyperbolic equation. The application might be transport of a species/concentration in some fluid flow (e.g. water) or nutrient transport in blood flow. Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be an open domain,  $x \in \Omega$  the spatial variable and  $t$  the time. Let  $\rho(x, t)$  be the density of some quantity (e.g., concentration) and let  $v(x, t)$  its velocity. Then the vector field

$$F = \rho v \quad \text{in } \mathbb{R}^n$$

denotes the flux of this quantity. Let  $G$  be a subset of  $\Omega$ . Then we have as in the previous case (Equation (6)) the definition:

$$\int_{\partial G} F \cdot n \, dx.$$

But this time we do not assume the ‘equilibrium state’ but ‘flow’. That is to say that the outward flow through the boundary  $\partial G$  must coincide with the temporal decrease of the quantity:

$$\int_{\partial G} F \cdot n \, ds = -\frac{d}{dt} \int_G \rho \, dx.$$

We then apply again Gauss’ divergence theorem to the left hand side and bring the resulting term to the right hand side. We now encounter a principle difficulty that the domain  $G$  may depend on time and consequently integration and differentiation do not commute. Therefore, in a first step we need to transform the integrand of

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_G \rho \, dx$$

onto a fixed referene configuration  $\hat{G}$  in which we can insert the time derivative under the integral sign. Then we perform the calculation and transform lastly everything back to the physical domain  $G$ . Let the mapping between  $\hat{G}$  and  $G$  be denoted by  $T$ . Then, it holds:

$$x \in G : x = T(\hat{x}, t), \quad \hat{x} \in \hat{G}.$$

Moreover,  $dx = J(\hat{x}, t)d\hat{x}$ , where  $J := \det(\nabla T)$ . Using the substitution rule (change of variables) in higher dimensions (see Section 3.13) yields:

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_G \rho(x, t) \, dx = \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\hat{G}} \rho(T(\hat{x}, t), t) J(\hat{x}, t) d\hat{x}.$$

We eliminated time dependence on the right hand side integral and thus differentiation and integration commute now:

$$\int_{\hat{G}} \frac{d}{dt} \left( \rho(T(\hat{x}, t), t) J(\hat{x}, t) \right) d\hat{x} = \int_{\hat{G}} \left( \frac{d}{dt} \rho(T(\hat{x}, t), t) \cdot J(\hat{x}, t) + \rho(T(\hat{x}, t), t) \frac{d}{dt} J(\hat{x}, t) \right) d\hat{x}$$

Here,  $\frac{d}{dt} \rho(T(\hat{x}, t), t)$  is the material time derivative of a spatial field (see e.g., [20]), which is not the same as the partial time derivative! In the last step, we need the Eulerian expansion formula

$$\frac{d}{dt} J = \nabla \cdot v J.$$

Then:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \int_{\hat{G}} \left( \frac{d}{dt} \rho(T(\hat{x}, t), t) \cdot J(\hat{x}, t) + \rho(T(\hat{x}, t), t) \frac{d}{dt} J(\hat{x}, t) \right) d\hat{x} \\
&= \int_{\hat{G}} \left( \frac{d}{dt} \rho(T(\hat{x}, t), t) \cdot J(\hat{x}, t) + \rho(T(\hat{x}, t), t) \nabla \cdot v J \right) d\hat{x} \\
&= \int_{\hat{G}} \left( \frac{d}{dt} \rho(T(\hat{x}, t), t) + \rho(T(\hat{x}, t), t) \nabla \cdot v \right) J(\hat{x}, t) d\hat{x} \\
&= \int_G \left( \frac{d}{dt} \rho(x, t) + \rho(x, t) \nabla \cdot v \right) dx \\
&= \int_G \left( \partial_t \rho(x, t) + \nabla \rho(x, t) \cdot v + \rho(x, t) \nabla \cdot v \right) dx \\
&= \int_G \left( \partial_t \rho(x, t) + \nabla \cdot (\rho v) \right) dx.
\end{aligned}$$

Collecting the previous calculations brings us to:

$$\int_G (\partial_t \rho + \nabla \cdot F) dx = \int_G (\partial_t \rho + \nabla \cdot (\rho v)) dx, \quad \text{where } F = \rho v \text{ as introduced before.}$$

This is the so-called continuity equation (or mass conservation). Since  $G$  was arbitrary, we are allowed to write the strong form:

$$\partial_t \rho + \nabla \cdot (\rho v) = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega. \tag{8}$$

If there are sources or sinks, denoted by  $f$ , inside  $\Omega$  we obtain the more general formulation:

$$\partial_t \rho + \nabla \cdot (\rho v) = f \quad \text{in } \Omega.$$

On the other hand, various simplifications of Equation (8) can be made when certain requirements are fulfilled. For instance, if  $\rho$  is not spatially varying, we obtain:

$$\partial_t \rho + \rho \nabla \cdot v = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega.$$

If furthermore  $\rho$  is constant in time, we obtain:

$$\nabla \cdot v = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega.$$

This is now the mass conservation law that appears for instance in the incompressible Navier-Stokes equations, which are discussed a little bit later below.

In terms of the density  $\rho$ , we have shown in this section:

**Theorem 6.2** (Reynolds' transport theorem). *Let  $\Phi := \Phi(x, t)$  be a smooth scalar field and  $\Omega$  a (moving) domain. It holds:*

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_{\Omega} \Phi dx = \int_{\partial\Omega} \Phi v \cdot n ds + \int_{\Omega} \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial t} dx$$

*The first term on the right hand side represents the **rate of transport** (also known as the **outward normal flux**) of the quantity  $\Phi v$  across the boundary surface  $\partial\Omega$ . This contribution originates from the moving domain  $\Omega$ . The second contribution is the **local time rate of change** of the spatial scalar field  $\Phi$ . If the domain  $\Omega$  does not move, the first term on the right hand side will of course vanish. Using Gauss' divergence theorem it holds furthermore:*

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_{\Omega} \Phi dx = \int_{\Omega} \nabla \cdot (\Phi v) dx + \int_{\Omega} \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial t} dx.$$

- Elasticity (Lamé-Navier) : elastic deformation of a solid. This example is already difficult because a system of nonlinear equations is considered:

**Formulation 6.3.** Let  $\widehat{\Omega}_s \subset \mathbb{R}^n, n = 3$  with the boundary  $\partial\widehat{\Omega} := \widehat{\Gamma}_D \cup \widehat{\Gamma}_N$ . Furthermore, let  $I := (0, T]$  where  $T > 0$  is the end time value. The equations for geometrically non-linear elastodynamics in the reference configuration  $\widehat{\Omega}$  are given as follows: Find vector-valued displacements  $\widehat{u}_s := (\widehat{u}_s^{(x)}, \widehat{u}_s^{(y)}, \widehat{u}_s^{(z)}) : \widehat{\Omega}_s \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  such that

$$\begin{aligned}\widehat{\rho}_s \partial_t^2 \widehat{u}_s - \widehat{\nabla} \cdot (\widehat{F} \widehat{\Sigma}) - \partial_t \widehat{\nabla} \cdot (\widehat{\Sigma}_v) &= 0 \quad \text{in } \widehat{\Omega}_s \times I, \\ \widehat{u}_s &= 0 \quad \text{on } \widehat{\Gamma}_D \times I, \\ \widehat{F} \widehat{\Sigma} \cdot \widehat{n}_s &= \widehat{h}_s \quad \text{on } \widehat{\Gamma}_N \times I, \\ \widehat{u}_s(0) &= \widehat{u}_0 \quad \text{in } \widehat{\Omega}_s \times \{0\}, \\ \widehat{v}_s(0) &= \widehat{v}_0 \quad \text{in } \widehat{\Omega}_s \times \{0\}.\end{aligned}$$

We deal with two types of boundary conditions: Dirichlet and Neumann conditions. Furthermore, two initial conditions on the displacements and the velocity are required. The constitutive law is given by the geometrically nonlinear tensors (see e.g., Ciarlet [9]):

$$\widehat{\Sigma} = \widehat{\Sigma}_s(\widehat{u}_s) = 2\mu\widehat{E} + \lambda \text{tr}(\widehat{E})I, \quad \widehat{E} = \frac{1}{2}(\widehat{F}^T \widehat{F} - I). \quad (9)$$

Here,  $\mu$  and  $\lambda$  are the Lamé coefficients for the solid. The solid density is denoted by  $\widehat{\rho}_s$  and the solid deformation gradient is  $\widehat{F} = \widehat{I} + \widehat{\nabla} \widehat{u}_s$  where  $\widehat{I} \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  is the identity matrix. Furthermore,  $\widehat{n}_s$  denotes the normal vector.

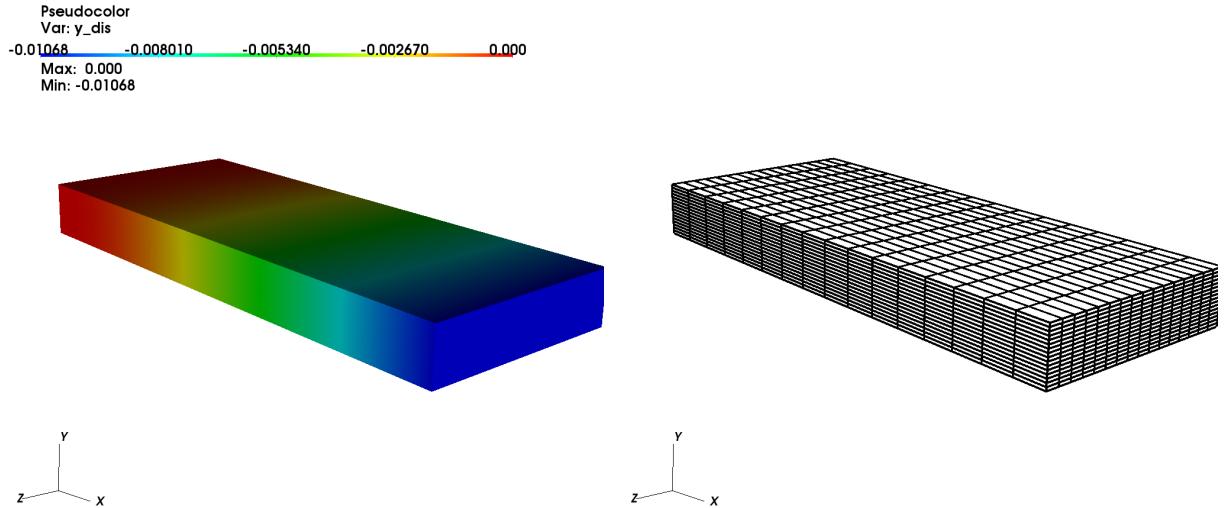


Figure 2: 3D (linearized) elasticity:  $u_y$  solution and mesh. The elastic beam is attached at  $x = 0$  in the  $y - z$  plane by  $u_x = u_y = u_z = 0$ . All other boundaries are traction free (homogeneous Neumann conditions).

- Navier-Stokes problem (fluid mechanics). Flow equations in general are extremely important and have an incredible amount of possible applications such as for example water (fluids), blood flow, wind, weather forecast, aerodynamics:

**Formulation 6.4.** Let  $\Omega_f \subset \mathbb{R}^n, n = 3$ . Furthermore, let the boundary be split into  $\partial\Omega_f := \Gamma_{in} \cup \Gamma_{out} \cup \Gamma_D \cup \Gamma_i$ . The isothermal, incompressible (non-linear) Navier-Stokes equations read: Find vector-valued velocities  $v_f : \Omega_f \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  and a scalar-valued pressure  $p_f : \Omega_f \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\rho_f \partial_t v_f + \rho_f v_f \cdot \nabla v_f - \nabla \cdot \sigma_f(v_f, p_f) = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega_f \times I, \quad (10)$$

$$\nabla \cdot v_f = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega_f \times I, \quad (11)$$

$$v_f^D = v_{in} \quad \text{on } \Gamma_{in} \times I, \quad (12)$$

$$v_f = 0 \quad \text{on } \Gamma_D \times I, \quad (13)$$

$$-p_f n_f + \rho_f \nu_f \nabla v_f \cdot n_f = 0 \quad \text{on } \Gamma_{out} \times I, \quad (14)$$

$$v_f = h_f \quad \text{on } \Gamma_i \times I, \quad (15)$$

$$v_f(0) = v_0 \quad \text{in } \Omega_f \times \{t = 0\}, \quad (16)$$

where the (symmetric) Cauchy stress is given by

$$\sigma_f(v_f, p_f) := -pI + \rho_f \nu_f (\nabla v + \nabla v^T),$$

with the density  $\rho_f$  and the kinematic viscosity  $\nu_f$ . The normal vector is denoted by  $n_f$ .

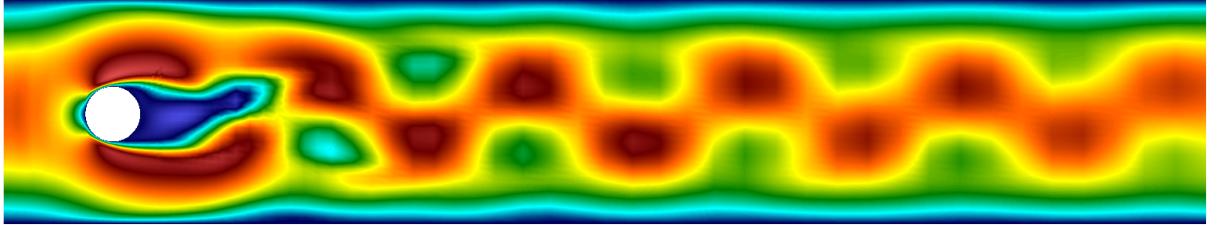


Figure 3: Prototype example of a fluid mechanics problem (isothermal, incompressible Navier-Stokes equations): the famous Karman vortex street. The setting is based on the benchmark setting [30] and the code can be found in NonStat Example 1 in [15] [www.dopelib.net](http://www.dopelib.net).

**Remark 6.5.** The two Formulations 6.3 and 6.4 are very important in many applications and their coupling results in fluid-structure interaction. Here we notice that flow fluids are usually modeled in Eulerian coordinates and solid deformations in Lagrangian coordinates. In the case of small displacements, the two coordinate systems can be identified, i.e.,  $\hat{\Omega} \simeq \Omega$ . This is the reason why in many basic books - in particular basics of PDE theory or basics of numerical algorithms - the ‘hat’ notation (or similar notation to distinguish coordinate systems) is not used.

**Exercise 1.** Recapitulate (in case you have had classes on continuum mechanics) the differences between Lagrangian and Eulerian coordinates.

## 6.2 One important ODE

In the first of the previous examples (setting  $a = g - m$ ), we introduced one of the most important ODEs:

$$y' = ay, \quad y(t_0) = y_0.$$

This ODE serves often as model problem and important concepts such as existence, uniqueness, stability are usually introduced in terms of this ODE.

### 6.3 Three important PDEs

From the previous considerations, we can extract three important types of PDEs. But we refrain to give the impression that all differential equations can be classified and then a receipt for solving them applies. This is definitely not true. However, in particular for PDEs, we are often faced with three outstanding types of equations and often ‘new’ equations can be related or simplified to these three types.

#### 6.3.0.1 The PDEs

They read:

- Poisson problem:  $-\Delta u = f$  is elliptic: second order in space and no time dependence.
- Heat equation:  $\partial_t u - \Delta u = f$  is parabolic: second order in space and first order in time.
- Wave equation:  $\partial_t^2 u - \Delta u = f$  is hyperbolic: second order in space and second order in time.

All these three equations have in common that their spatial order is two (the highest derivative with respect to spatial variables that occurs in the equation). With regard to time, there are differences: the heat equation is of first order whereas the wave equation is second order in time.

Let us now consider these three types in a bit more detail. The problem is given by:

**Formulation 6.6.** Let  $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given. Furthermore,  $\Omega$  is an open, bounded set of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . We seek the unknown function  $u : \bar{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$Lu = f \quad \text{in } \Omega, \tag{17}$$

$$\text{and bc and ic.} \tag{18}$$

Here, the linear second-order differential operator is defined by:

$$Lu := - \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}$$

with the symmetry assumption  $a_{ij} = a_{ji}$ .

The operator  $L$  generates a quadratic form  $\Sigma$ , which is defined as

$$\Sigma(\xi) := \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \xi_i \xi_j.$$

The properties of the form  $\Sigma$  (and consequently the classification of the underlying PDE) depends on the eigenvalues of the matrix  $A$ :

$$A = (a_{ij})_{i,j=1}^n.$$

At the a given point  $x \in \Omega$ , the differential operator  $L$  is said to be elliptic if all eigenvalues of  $A$  are non-zero (the matrix  $A$  is positive definite) and have the same sign: Equivalently one can say:

**Definition 6.7.** A PDE operator  $L$  is (uniformly) elliptic if there exists a constant  $\theta > 0$  such that

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \xi_i \xi_j \geq \theta |\xi|^2,$$

for a.e.  $x \in \Omega$  and all  $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^n$ .

For parabolic PDEs one eigenvalue of  $A$  is zero whereas the others have the same sign. Finally, a hyperbolic equation has one eigenvalue that has a different sign (negative) than all the others (positive).

Even so that we define separate types of PDEs, in many processes there is a mixture of these classes in one single PDE - depending on the size of certain parameters. For instance, the Navier-Stokes equations for modeling fluid flow, vary between parabolic and hyperbolic type depending on the Reynold's number  $Re \sim \nu_f^{-1}$  (respectively a characteristic velocity and a characteristic length). In this case the coefficients  $a_{ij}$  of the operator  $L$  are non-constant and change with respect to space and time.

**6.3.0.2 Poisson problem/Laplace equation** The Poisson equation is a boundary-value problem and will be derived from the general definition (very similar to the form before). Elliptic problems are second-order in space and have no time dependence.

**Formulation 6.8.** Let  $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given. Furthermore,  $\Omega$  is an open, bounded set of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . We seek the unknown function  $u : \bar{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$Lu = f \quad \text{in } \Omega, \tag{19}$$

$$u = 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega. \tag{20}$$

Here, the linear second-order differential operator is defined by:

$$Lu := - \sum_{i,j=1}^n \partial_{x_j}(a_{ij}(x)\partial_{x_i}u) + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i(x)u\partial_{x_i} + c(x)u,$$

with the symmetry assumption  $a_{ij} = a_{ji}$  and given coefficient functions  $a_{ij}, b_i, c$ . Alternatively we often use the compact notation with derivatives defined in terms of the nabla-operator:

$$Lu := -\nabla \cdot (a\nabla u) + b\nabla u + cu.$$

Finally we notice that the boundary condition (20) is often called homogeneous Dirichlet condition.

**Remark 6.9.** If the coefficient functions  $a, b, c$  also depend on the solution  $u$  we obtain a nonlinear PDE.

**Formulation 6.10** (Poisson problem). Setting in Formulation 6.8,  $a_{ij} = \delta_{ij}$  and  $b_i = 0$  and  $c = 0$ , we obtain the Laplace operator. Let  $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given. Furthermore,  $\Omega$  is an open, bounded set of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . We seek the unknown function  $u : \bar{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$Lu = f \quad \text{in } \Omega, \tag{21}$$

$$u = 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega. \tag{22}$$

Here, the linear second-order differential operator is defined by:

$$Lu := -\nabla \cdot (\nabla u) = -\Delta u.$$

In the following we discuss some characteristics of the solution of the Laplace problem, which can be generalized to general elliptic problems.

**Theorem 6.11** (Strong maximum principle for the Laplace problem). Suppose  $u \in C^2(\Omega) \cap C(\bar{\Omega})$  is a solution of Laplace problem. Then

$$\max_{\Omega} u = \max_{\partial\Omega} u.$$

From the maximum principle we obtain immediately uniqueness of a solution

**Theorem 6.12** (Uniqueness of the Laplace problem). Let  $g \in C(\partial\Omega)$  and  $f \in C(\Omega)$ . Then there exists at most one solution  $u \in C^2(\Omega) \cap C(\bar{\Omega})$  of the boundary-value problem:

$$-\Delta u = f \quad \text{in } \Omega, \tag{23}$$

$$u = g \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega. \tag{24}$$

**6.3.0.3 Heat equation** We now study parabolic problems, which contain as the most famous example the heat equation. Parabolic problems are second order in space and first order in time.

In this section, we assume  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  to be an open and bounded set. The time interval is given by  $I := (0, T]$  for some fixed end time value  $T > 0$ .

We consider the initial/boundary-value problem:

**Formulation 6.13.** Let  $f : \Omega \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $g : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given. We seek the unknown function  $u : \bar{\Omega} \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\partial_t u + Lu = f \quad \text{in } \Omega \times I, \quad (25)$$

$$u = 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega \times [0, T], \quad (26)$$

$$u = g \quad \text{on } \Omega \times \{t = 0\}. \quad (27)$$

Here, the linear second-order differential operator is defined by:

$$Lu := - \sum_{i,j=1}^n \partial_{x_j} (a_{ij}(x, t) \partial_{x_i} u) + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i(x, t) u \partial_{x_i} + c(x, t) u,$$

for given (possibly spatial and time-dependent) coefficient functions  $a_{ij}, b_i, c$ .

We have the following:

**Definition 6.14.** The PDE operator  $\partial_t + L$  is (uniformly) parabolic if there exists a constant  $\theta > 0$  such that

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x, t) \xi_i \xi_j \geq \theta |\xi|^2,$$

for all  $(x, t) \in \Omega \times I$  and all  $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . In particular this operator is elliptic in the spatial variable  $x$  for each fixed time  $0 \leq t \leq T$ .

**Formulation 6.15** (Heat equation). Setting in Formulation 6.13,  $a_{ij} = \delta_{ij}$  and  $b_i = 0$  and  $c = 0$ , we obtain the Laplace operator. Let  $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given. Furthermore,  $\Omega$  is an open, bounded set of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . We seek the unknown function  $u : \bar{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\partial_t u + Lu = f \quad \text{in } \Omega \times I, \quad (28)$$

$$u = 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega \times [0, T], \quad (29)$$

$$u = g \quad \text{on } \Omega \times \{t = 0\}. \quad (30)$$

Here, the linear second-order differential operator is defined by:

$$Lu := -\nabla \cdot (\nabla u) = -\Delta u.$$

The heat equation has an infinite propagation speed for disturbances. If the initial temperature is non-negative and is positive somewhere, the temperature at any later time is everywhere positive. For the heat equation, a very similar maximum principle as for elliptic problems holds true.

**Theorem 6.16** (Strong maximum principle for the heat equation). Suppose  $u \in C_1^2(\Omega \times I) \cap C(\bar{\Omega} \times I)$  is a solution of heat equation. Then

$$\max_{\bar{\Omega} \times I} u = \max_{\partial\Omega} u.$$

And also as for elliptic problems one can proof uniqueness for the parabolic case in a similar way.

**6.3.0.4 Wave equation** In this section, we shall study hyperbolic problems, which are natural generalizations of the wave equation. As for parabolic problems, let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  to be an open and bounded set. The time interval is given by  $I := (0, T]$  for some fixed end time value  $T > 0$ .

We consider the initial/boundary-value problem:

**Formulation 6.17.** Let  $f : \Omega \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $g : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be given. We seek the unknown function  $u : \bar{\Omega} \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\partial_t^2 u + Lu = f \quad \text{in } \Omega \times I, \quad (31)$$

$$u = 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega \times [0, T], \quad (32)$$

$$u = g \quad \text{on } \Omega \times \{t = 0\}, \quad (33)$$

$$\partial_t u = h \quad \text{on } \Omega \times \{t = 0\}. \quad (34)$$

In the last line,  $\partial_t u = v$  can be identified as the velocity. Furthermore, the linear second-order differential operator is defined by:

$$Lu := - \sum_{i,j=1}^n \partial_{x_j} (a_{ij}(x,t) \partial_{x_i} u) + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i(x,t) u \partial_{x_i} + c(x,t) u$$

for given (possibly spatial and time-dependent) coefficient functions  $a_{ij}, b_i, c$ .

**Remark 6.18.** Actually the wave equation is often written in terms of a first-order system in which the velocity is introduced and a second-order time derivative is avoided. Then the previous equation reads: Find  $u : \bar{\Omega} \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $v : \bar{\Omega} \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\partial_t v + Lu = f \quad \text{in } \Omega \times I, \tag{35}$$

$$\partial_t u = v \quad \text{in } \Omega \times I, \tag{36}$$

$$u = 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega \times [0, T], \tag{37}$$

$$u = g \quad \text{on } \Omega \times \{t = 0\}, \tag{38}$$

$$v = h \quad \text{on } \Omega \times \{t = 0\}. \tag{39}$$

We have the following:

**Definition 6.19.** The PDE operator  $\partial_t^2 + L$  is (uniformly) hyperbolic if there exists a constant  $\theta > 0$  such that

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x,t) \xi_i \xi_j \geq \theta |\xi|^2.$$

for all  $(x,t) \in \Omega \times I$  and all  $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . In particular this operator is elliptic in the spatial variable  $x$  for each fixed time  $0 \leq t \leq T$ .

And as before, setting the coefficients functions to trivial values, we obtain the original wave equation. In contrast to parabolic problems, a strong maximum principle does not hold for hyperbolic equations. And consequently, the propagation speed is finite.

## 6.4 The general definition of a differential equation

After the previous examples, let us precise the definition of a differential equation. The definition holds true for ODEs and PDEs equally. In order to allow for largest possible generality we first need to introduce some notation. Common is to use the multiindex notation as introduced in Section 3.5.

**Definition 6.20** (Evans [14]). Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be open. Furthermore, let  $k \geq 1$  an integer that denotes the order of the differential equation. Then, a differential equation can be expressed as: Find  $u : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$F(D^k u, D^{k-1} u, \dots, D^2 u, Du, u, x) = 0, \quad \text{for } x \in \Omega,$$

where

$$F : \mathbb{R}^{n^k} \times \mathbb{R}^{n^{k-1}} \times \mathbb{R}^{n^2} \times \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R} \times \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}.$$

**Example 6.21.** We provide some examples. Let us assume the spatial dimension to be 2 and the temporal dimension is 1. That is for a time-dependent ODE  $n = 1$  and for time-dependent PDE cases,  $n = 2 + 1 = 3$ , and for stationary PDE examples  $n = 2$ .

1. ODE model problem:  $F(Du, u) := u' - au = 0$  where  $F : \mathbb{R}^1 \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . Here  $k = 1$ .
2. Laplace operator:  $F(D^2 u) := -\Delta u = 0$  where  $F : \mathbb{R}^4 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . That is  $k = 2$  and lower derivatives of order 1 and 0 do not exist.
3. Heat equation:  $F(D^2 u, Du) = \partial_t u - \Delta u = 0$  where  $F : \mathbb{R}^9 \times \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . Here  $k = 2$  is the same as before, but a lower-order derivative of order 1 in form of the time derivative does exist.

4. Wave equation:  $F(D^2u) = \partial_t^2 u - \Delta u = 0$  where  $F : \mathbb{R}^9 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .

We finally, provide classifications of **linear** and **nonlinear** differential equations. Simply speaking: each differential equation, which is not linear is called nonlinear. However, in the nonlinear case a further refined classification can be undertaken.

**Definition 6.22** (Evans[14] ). *Differential equations are divided into linear and nonlinear as follows:*

1. A differential equation is called **linear** if it is of the form:

$$\sum_{|\alpha| \leq k} a_\alpha(x) D^\alpha u - f(x) = 0.$$

2. A differential equation is called **semi-linear** if it is of the form:

$$\sum_{|\alpha|=k} a_\alpha(x) D^\alpha u + a_0(D^{k-1}u, \dots, D^2u, Du, u, x) = 0.$$

Here, nonlinearities may appear in all terms of order  $|\alpha| < k$ , but the highest order  $|\alpha| = k$  is fully linear.

3. A differential equation is called **quasi-linear** if it is of the form:

$$\sum_{|\alpha|=k} a_\alpha(D^{k-1}u, \dots, D^2u, Du, u, x) D^\alpha u + a_0(D^{k-1}u, \dots, D^2u, Du, u, x) = 0.$$

Here, full nonlinearities may appear in all terms of order  $|\alpha| < k$ , in the highest order  $|\alpha| = k$ , nonlinear terms appear up to order  $|\alpha| < k$ .

4. If none of the previous cases applies, a differential equation is called (fully) **nonlinear**.

**Example 6.23.** We provide again some examples:

1. All differential equations from Example 6.21 are **linear**.

2. Euler equations (fluid dynamics, special case of Navier-Stokes with zero viscosity). Here,  $n = 2+1+1 = 4$  (in two spatial dimensions). Let us consider the momentum part of the Euler equations:

$$\partial_t v_f + v_f \cdot \nabla v_f + \nabla p_f = f(x).$$

Here the highest order is  $k = 1$  (in the temporal variable as well as the spatial variable). But in front of the spatial derivative, we multiply with the zero-order term  $v_f$ . Consequently, the Euler equations are **quasi-linear** because a lower-order term of the solution variable is multiplied with the highest derivative.

3. Navier-Stokes momentum equation:

$$\partial_t v_f - \rho_f \nu_f \Delta v_f + v_f \cdot \nabla v_f + \nabla p_f = f(x).$$

Here  $k = 2$ . But the coefficients in front of the highest order term, do not depend on  $v_f$ . Consequently, the Navier-Stokes equations are semi-linear or linear. Well, we have again the nonlinearity of the first order convection term  $v_f \cdot \nabla v_f$ . Thus the Navier-Stokes equations are **semi-linear**.

4. A fully **nonlinear** situation would be:

$$\partial_t v_f - \rho_f \nu_f (\Delta v_f)^2 + v_f \cdot \nabla v_f + \nabla p_f = f(x).$$

**Example 6.24** (Development of numerical methods for nonlinear equations). *In case you are given a nonlinear IBVP and want to start developing numerical methods for this specific PDE, it is often much easier to start with appropriate simplifications in order to build step-by-step your final method. Let us say you are given the nonlinear time-dependent PDE*

$$\nabla u \partial_t^2 u + u \cdot \nabla u - (\Delta u)^2 = f$$

*Then, you could abstract the problem as follows:*

1. Consider the linear equation:

$$\partial_t^2 u - \Delta u = f$$

which is nothing else than the wave equation.

2. Add a slight nonlinearity to make the problem semi-linear:

$$\partial_t^2 u + u \cdot \nabla u - \Delta u = f$$

3. Add  $\nabla u$  such that the problem becomes quasi-linear:

$$\nabla u \partial_t^2 u + u \cdot \nabla u - \Delta u = f$$

4. Make the problem fully nonlinear by considering  $(\Delta u)^2$ :

$$\nabla u \partial_t^2 u + u \cdot \nabla u - (\Delta u)^2 = f.$$

In each step, make sure that the corresponding numerical solution makes sense and that your developments so far are correct. If yes, proceed to the next step.

**Remark 6.25.** The contrary to the previous example works as well and arises very often in practice. And should be kept in mind! Often you are given a very complicated PDE (or PDE system). Let assume we deal with a fully nonlinear PDE problem. If you have undertaken the implementation recognize a difficulty, you can reduce (should!) the PDE term by term and make it step by step simpler up to a linear version. The same procedure holds true for the mathematical analysis. If a proof does not work, we try to neglect terms or to linearize them.

**Exercise 2.** We work in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Let  $F = I + \nabla u$ , where  $I$  is the identity matrix in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and  $u$  a given deformation.

1. Write  $F$  component-wise.

2. Compute the determinant  $J := \det(F)$ .

Let us consider now the following problem. Find  $v : \Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  such that:

$$\begin{aligned} -\operatorname{div}(J\sigma_f F^T) &= f \quad \text{in } \Omega, \\ v &= 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega, \end{aligned}$$

where  $\partial\Omega$  is the boundary of  $\Omega$  and  $f$  a given volume force. Furthermore,

$$\sigma_f = \nu(\nabla v F^{-1}),$$

where  $\nu$  is a material parameter.

1. Compute  $F^{-1}$ .
2. Linearize the PDE-operator  $-\operatorname{div}(J\sigma_f F^T)$ . Hint: Try to get rid of the transformations  $J$  and  $F$ . Under which assumptions are they small?
3. Write the final PDE  $-\operatorname{div}(A) = f$  component-wise. Here,  $A$  is now the linearized part from the task before.

**Exercise 3.** Classify the following PDEs into linear and nonlinear PDEs (including a short justification):

$$\begin{aligned} -\nabla \cdot (|\nabla u|^{p-2} \nabla u) &= f \\ \det(\nabla^2 u) &= f \\ \partial_t^2 u + 2a\partial_t u - \partial_{xx} u &= 0, \quad a > 0 \\ \partial_t u + u\partial_x u &= 0 \\ \partial_{tt} u - \Delta u + m^2 u &= 0, \quad m > 0. \end{aligned}$$

How can we linearize nonlinear PDEs? Which terms need to be simplified such that we obtain a linear PDE?

## 6.5 Boundary and initial conditions

As seen in the previous sections, all PDEs are complemented with boundary conditions and in the time-dependent case, also with initial conditions. Actually, these are crucial ingredients for solving differential equations. Often, one has the (wrong) impression that only the PDE itself is of importance. But what happens on the boundaries finally yields the ‘result’ of the computation. And this holds true for analytical (classical) as well as computational solutions.

### 6.5.1 Types of boundary conditions

In Section 6.3, we have mainly dealt with homogeneous Dirichlet conditions of the form  $u = 0$  on the boundary. In general three types of conditions are of importance:

- Dirichlet (or essential) boundary conditions:  $u = g_D$  on  $\partial\Omega_D$ ; when  $g_D = 0$  we say ‘homogeneous’ boundary condition.
- Neumann (or natural) boundary conditions:  $\partial_n u = g_N$  on  $\partial\Omega_N$ ; when  $g_N = 0$  we say ‘homogeneous’ boundary condition.
- Robin (third type) boundary condition:  $au + b\partial_n u = g_R$  on  $\partial\Omega_R$ ; when  $g_R = 0$  we say ‘homogeneous’ boundary condition.

On each boundary section, only one of the three conditions can be described. In particular the natural conditions generalize when dealing with more general operators  $L$ . Here in this section, we have assumed  $L := -\Delta u$ .

**Example 6.26.** Let us compute the heat distribution in PC 41. The room volume is  $\Omega$ . The window wall is a Dirichlet boundary  $\partial_D\Omega$  and the remaining walls are Neumann boundaries  $\partial_N\Omega$ . Let  $K$  be the air viscosity.

We consider the heat equation: Find  $T : \Omega \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_t T + (v \cdot \nabla) T - \nabla \cdot (K \nabla T) &= f \quad \text{in } \Omega \times I, \\ T &= 18C \quad \text{on } \partial_D\Omega \times I, \\ K \nabla T \cdot n &= 0 \quad \text{on } \partial_N\Omega \times I, \\ T(0) &= 15C \quad \text{in } \Omega \times \{0\}. \end{aligned}$$

The homogeneous Neumann condition means that there is no heat exchange on the respective walls (thus neighboring rooms will have the same room temperature). The nonhomogeneous Dirichlet condition states that there is a given temperature of  $18C$ , which is constant in time and space (but this condition may be also non-constant in time and space). Possible heaters in the room can be modeled via the right hand side  $f$ .

### 6.5.2 Common traps and errors

We provide a list of traps and challenges:

- If your solution is ‘wrong’ (why-ever you might know this) then check of course the PDE but also the boundary conditions;
- Do you correctly apply the boundary conditions in your computer program to all boundary parts? Be careful, no explicit prescription means that implicitly Neumann conditions are applied (more details in Section 8);
- Often physical formulae assume that the solution has been computed on an infinite domain. However in a computer program we must cut the domain to a finite dimensional subset. Thus, boundary conditions will influence the result. The question is how much such ‘artificial’ boundary conditions will influence the findings?

### 6.5.3 Example: Dependence of the numerical solution on the boundaries

To illustrate the dependence of the numerical solution on the boundaries (or the domain size), let us consider an example from channel fluid flow as sketched in Figure 4

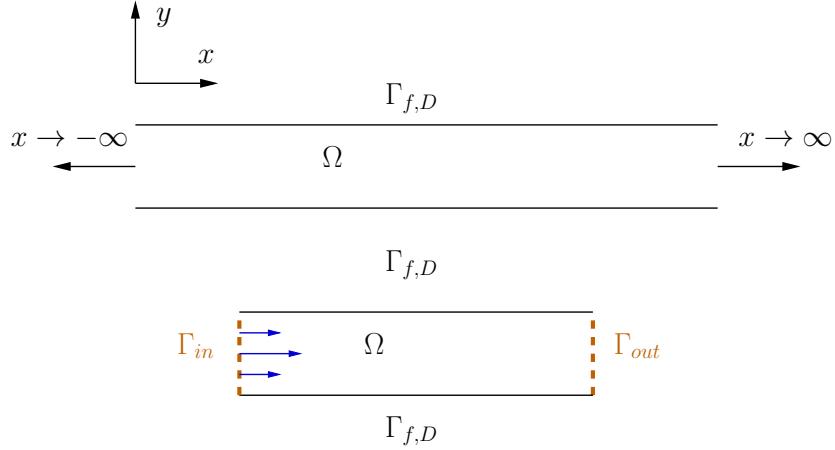


Figure 4: Truncation of an unbounded fluid domain and introducing artificial boundary conditions on  $\Gamma_{in}$  and  $\Gamma_{out}$ .

Moreover, we are interested in evaluating quantities of interest (or mathematically-speaking functionals of interest). In solid mechanics, these are deflections and deformations: what is the displacement of a bridge subject to weather (wind) or forces caused by trucks driving over it. In fluid mechanics, one is often interested in evaluating surface forces such as drag and lift. What have these comments to do with boundary conditions? As previously claimed, boundary conditions and the domain size can have significant influence on quantities of interest - even when these functional evaluations are far away from the boundary. Ideally, the domain should be infinitely large (see again Figure 4) such that boundary conditions do not play a role. However, this is in most case impossible to achieve due to computational cost.

Let us illustrate these considerations with an example: in channel flow with an elastic beam, we want to evaluate the tip-deflection of the beam and also drag and lift forces acting on this beam and the hole. The question is where to we cut the channel in order to impose artificial boundary conditions. We run numerical simulations for four different channel lengths  $5.0m$ ,  $2.5m$ ,  $1.5m$  and  $1.0m$  leading to the results presented in Table 1 in which we clearly see that some of the functionals depend significantly on the length of the channel. For example the relative error of the drag evaluation is about 14%.

Table 1: Dependence of functional evaluations on the length (i.e., on the boundaries) of the channel.

Length	$u_x(A)[10^{-5}]$	$u_y(A)[10^{-4}]$	Drag	Lift
5.0	2.02	8.22	16.7	0.74
2.5	2.27	8.22	15.3	0.74
1.5	2.38	8.23	14.6	0.74
1.0	2.47	7.94	14.3	0.73

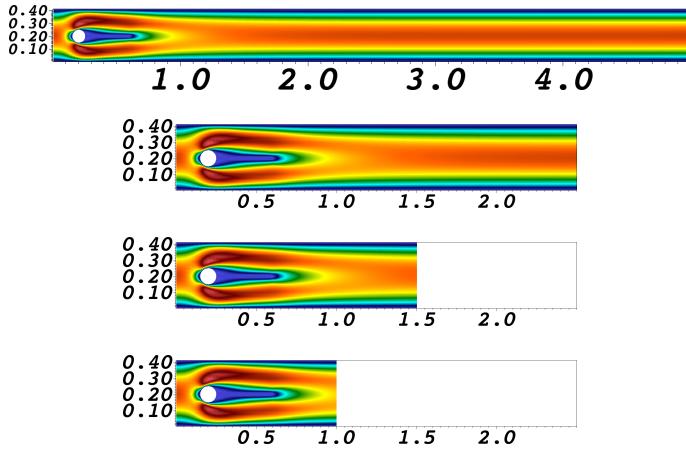


Figure 5: Fluid flow and structural deformations computed for different channel lengths to illustrate dependence of functional evaluations on boundary conditions.

**Definition 6.27** (Drag and lift). *Drag and lift are important technical quantities in fluid dynamics. The drag force acts in the opposite direction of the relative motion of the object that is subject to a fluid (or air). The lift force is perpendicular to the drag.*

## 6.6 Weak/variational solutions versus classical solutions

To solve explicitly a differential equation is only possible for specific special test cases. Thus, a classical solution is in most cases not possible to achieve. Moreover, they require in many cases too much regularity which is difficult to handle as well as often not met by practical applications (e.g., singularities in the domain as corners or slit domains). In order to study well-posedness and simultaneously provide a framework for numerical computations, we work with **weak (or variational)** solutions based on Galerkin techniques. In physics and mechanics this procedure is well-known as the **principle of virtual work**. Such approaches are introduced in Section 8. Thus, we lower our requirements on the smoothness of the solution. For instance error estimates of the form  $\|u - u_h\|$  for elliptic problems require lower regularity when working with variational concepts (e.g., finite elements) than using finite differences.

## 6.7 The challenge of numerical modeling

To finalize this first chapter we provide a list of typical difficulties:

- PDEs are more difficult than ODEs.
- Nonlinear equations are more difficult than linear equations.
- Higher-order PDEs/ODEs are more difficult than low-order PDEs/ODEs.
- Systems are harder than single equations.
- The more coupling terms appear, the more difficult the solution process becomes.
- Interface coupling for two (or more) PDEs is harder than volume coupling.
- Multidomain problems are harder than single domain problems.
- For most PDEs/ODEs an explicit formula of a solution does not exist, and therefore numerical modeling becomes indispensable.
- Correct implementation and debugging code takes a lot of time.

## 6.8 Philosophy of numerical modeling

All the previous types of different equations we have seen in this chapter have different properties and these **properties on the continuous level should be maintained as well as possible after numerical discretization.** Thus it is extremely important to understand the properties of a differential equation (at least to some extend) on the continuous level (ODE/PDE theory) in order to be able to derive and analyze appropriate algorithmic schemes.

## 7 Finite differences for ODE initial-values problems

Finite differences have been very popular in the past and are still very important to solve initial-value problems (IVP) and boundary value problems (BVP). Often finite differences are used in combination with other discretization methods as for example finite elements (Section 8). For example in a time-dependent PDE, we need to discretize in time and space. Using the Rothe method (horizontal method of lines) temporal discretization is often based on finite differences and spatial discretization on finite elements. In these notes we restrict ourselves to single-step methods. Multistep methods are treated elsewhere (e.g., [18]).

### 7.1 Problem statement of an IVP (initial value problem)

We consider ODE initial values problems of the form:

**Formulation 7.1.** *Find a differentiable function  $y(t)$  for  $0 \leq t < T < \infty$  such that*

$$\begin{aligned} y'(t) &= f(t, y(t)), \\ y(0) &= y_0. \end{aligned}$$

The second condition is the so-called initial condition. Furthermore,  $y'(t) = \frac{d}{dt}y$  is the time derivative with respect to time.

The model problem of an ODE is

$$y' = \lambda y, \quad y(0) = y_0, \quad y_0, \lambda \in \mathbb{R}. \quad (40)$$

This ODE has the solution:

$$y(t) = \exp(\lambda t)y_0.$$

Furthermore, Problem (40) is an example of an autonomous and linear ODE. It is autonomous because the right hand side does not explicitly depend on the variable  $t$ , i.e.,  $f(t, y) = f(y) = \lambda y$ . And this ODE is linear because the coefficient  $\lambda$  is independent of the solution  $y$ . One further classification can be made in case the right hand side  $f = 0$ . Then we say that the ODE is homogeneous.

### 7.2 Stiff problems

An essential difficulty in developing stable numerical schemes, is associated with **stiffness**, which we shall define in the following. Stiffness is very important in both ODE and (time-dependent) PDE applications. The latter situation will be discussed in Section 9.4.

**Definition 7.2.** *An IVP is called **stiff** (along a solution  $y(t)$ ) if the eigenvalues  $\lambda(t)$  of the Jacobian  $f'(t, y(t))$  yield the stiffness ratio:*

$$\kappa(t) := \frac{\max_{\operatorname{Re}\lambda(t)<0} |\operatorname{Re}\lambda(t)|}{\min_{\operatorname{Re}\lambda(t)<0} |\operatorname{Re}\lambda(t)|} \gg 1.$$

In the above case for the model problem, the eigenvalue corresponds directly to the coefficient  $\lambda$ .

It is however not really true to classify any ODE with large coefficients  $|\lambda| \gg 1$  always as a stiff problem. Here, the Lipschitz constant of the problem is already large and thus the discretization error asks for relatively small time steps. Rather stiff problems are characterized as ODE solutions that contain various components with (significant) different evolutions over time; that certainly appears in ODE systems in which we seek  $y(t) \in \mathbb{R}^n$  rather than  $y(t) \in \mathbb{R}$ .

A very illustrative example can be found in [32] in which for instance a solution to an ODE problem may look like:

$$y(t) = \exp(-t) + \exp(-99t).$$

Here, the first term defines the trajectory of the solution whereas the second term requires very small time steps in order to resolve the very rapid decrease of that function.

### 7.3 Well-posedness of solutions

In ODE lectures, we usually learn first the theorem of Peano, which ensures existence (but not uniqueness) of an ODE. In these notes, we consider directly the Picard-Lindelöf theorem, which establishes existence and uniqueness.

Consider the  $n$ -dimensional case:

$$y'(t) = f(t, y(t))$$

where  $y(t) = (y_1, \dots, y_n)^T$  and  $f(t, x) = (f_1, \dots, f_n)^T$ . Let an initial point  $(t_0, y_0) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^n$  be given. Furthermore, define

$$D = I \times \Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^1 \times \mathbb{R}^n$$

and let  $f(t, y)$  be continuous on  $D$ . We seek a solution  $y(t)$  on a time interval  $I = [t_0, t_0 + T]$  that satisfies  $y(t_0) = y_0$ .

A crucial aspect for uniqueness is a Lipschitz condition on the right hand side  $f(t, y)$ :

**Definition 7.3** (Lipschitz condition). *The function  $f(t, y)$  on  $D$  is said to be (uniformly) Lipschitz continuous if for  $L(t) > 0$  it holds*

$$\|f(t, x_1) - f(t, x_2)\| \leq L(t)\|x_1 - x_2\|, \quad (t, x_1), (t, x_2) \in D.$$

*The function is said to be (locally) Lipschitz continuous if the previous statement holds on every bounded subset of  $D$ .*

**Theorem 7.4** (Picard-Lindelöf). *Let  $f : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  be continuous and Lipschitz. Then there exists for each  $(t_0, y_0) \in D$  a  $\varepsilon > 0$  and a solution  $y : I := [t_0 - \varepsilon, t_0 + \varepsilon] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  of the IVP such that*

$$y'(t) = f(t, y(t)), \quad t \in I, \quad y(t_0) = y_0.$$

*Proof.* See for example [18]. □

### 7.4 One-step schemes

#### 7.4.1 The Euler method

The Euler method is the most simplest scheme. It is an explicit scheme and also known as forward Euler method.

We consider again the IVP from before and the right hand side satisfies again a Lipschitz condition. According to Theorem 7.4, there exists a unique solution for all  $t \geq 0$ .

For a numerical approximation of the IVP, we first select a sequence of discrete (time) points:

$$t_0 < t_1 < \dots < t_N = t_0 + T.$$

Furthermore we set

$$I_n = [t_{n-1}, t_n], \quad k_n = t_n - t_{n-1}, \quad k := \max_{1 \leq n \leq N} k_n.$$

The derivation of the Euler method is as follows: approximate the derivative with a forward difference quotient (we sit at the time point  $t_{n-1}$  and look forward in time):

$$y'(t_{n-1}) \approx \frac{y_n - y_{n-1}}{k_n}$$

Thus:  $y'(t_{n-1}) = f(t_{n-1}, y_{n-1}(t_{n-1}))$ . Then the ODE can be approximated as:

$$\frac{y_n - y_{n-1}}{k_n} \approx f(t_{n-1}, y_{n-1}(t_{n-1}))$$

Thus we obtain the scheme:

**Algorithm 7.5** (Euler method). *For a given starting point  $y_0 := y(0) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , the Euler method generates a sequence  $\{y_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  through*

$$y_n = y_{n-1} + k_n f(t_{n-1}, y_{n-1}), \quad n = 1, \dots, N,$$

where  $y_n := y(t_n)$ .

**Remark 7.6** (Notation). *The chosen notation is not optimal in the sense that  $y_n$  denotes the discrete solution obtained by the numerical scheme and  $y(t_n)$  the corresponding (unknown) exact solution. However, in the literature one often abbreviates  $y_n := y(t_n)$ , which would both denote the exact solution. One could add another index  $y_n^k$  ( $k$  for discretized solution with step size  $k$ ) to explicitly distinguish the discrete and exact solutions. In these notes, we hope that the reader will not confuse the notation and we still use  $y_n$  for the discrete solution and  $y(t_n)$  for the exact solution.*

#### 7.4.2 Implicit schemes

With the same notation as introduced in Section 7.4.1, we define two further schemes. Beside the Euler method, low-order simple schemes are implicit Euler and the trapezoidal rule. The main difference is that in general a nonlinear equation system needs to be solved in order to compute the solution. On the other hand we have better numerical stability properties in particular for stiff problems (an analysis will be undertaken in Section 7.5).

The derivation of the backward Euler method is derived as follows: approximate the derivative with a backward difference quotient (we sit at  $t_n$  and look back to  $t_{n-1}$ ):

$$y'(t_n) = \frac{y_n - y_{n-1}}{k_n}$$

Consequently, we take the right hand side  $f$  at the current time step  $y'(t_n) = f(t_n, y_n(t_n))$  and obtain as approximation

$$\frac{y_n - y_{n-1}}{k_n} = f(t_n, y_n(t_n)).$$

Consequently, we obtain a scheme in which the right hand side is unknown itself, which leads to a formulation of a nonlinear system:

**Algorithm 7.7** (Implicit (or backward) Euler). *The implicit Euler scheme is defined as:*

$$\begin{aligned} y_0 &:= y(0), \\ y_n - k_n f(t_n, y_n) &= y_{n-1}, \quad n = 1, \dots, N \end{aligned}$$

*In contrast to the Euler method, the ‘right hand side’ function  $f$  now depends on the unknown solution  $y_n$ . Thus the computational cost is (much) higher than for the (forward) Euler method. But on the contrary, the method does not require a time step restriction as we shall see in Section 7.5.3.*

To derive the trapezoidal rule, we take again the difference quotient on the left hand side but approximate the right hand side through its mean value:

$$\frac{y_n - y_{n-1}}{k_n} = \frac{1}{2} \left( f(t_n, y_n(t_n)) + f(t_{n-1}, y_{n-1}(t_{n-1})) \right),$$

which yields:

**Algorithm 7.8** (Trapezoidal rule (Crank-Nicolson)). *The trapezoidal rule reads:*

$$\begin{aligned} y_0 &:= y(0), \\ y_n &= y_{n-1} + \frac{1}{2} k_n \left( f(t_n, y_n) + f(t_{n-1}, y_{n-1}) \right), \quad n = 1, \dots, N. \end{aligned}$$

*It can be shown that the trapezoidal rule is of second order, which means that halving the step size  $k_n$  leads to an error that is four times smaller. This is illustrated with the help of a numerical example in Section 7.6.*

## 7.5 Numerical analysis

In the previous section, we have constructed algorithms that yield a sequence of discrete solution  $\{y_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ . In the numerical analysis our goal is to derive a convergence result of the form

$$\|y_n - y(t_n)\| \leq Ck^\alpha$$

where  $\alpha$  is the order of the scheme. This result will tell us that the discrete solution  $y^n$  really approximates the exact solution  $y$  and if we come closer to the exact solution at which rate we come closer.

### 7.5.1 The model problem

To derive error estimates we work with the model problem:

$$y' = \lambda y, \quad y(0) = y_0, \quad y_0, \lambda \in \mathbb{R}. \quad (41)$$

### 7.5.2 Splitting into stability and consistency

For linear numerical schemes the convergence is composed by **stability** and **consistency**. First of all we have from the previous section that  $y_n$  is obtained for the forward Euler method as:

$$y_n = (1 + k\lambda)y_{n-1}, \quad (42)$$

$$= B_E y_{n-1}, \quad B_E := (1 + k\lambda). \quad (43)$$

Let us write the error at each time point  $t_n$  as:

$$e_n := y_n - y(t_n) \quad \text{for } 1 \leq n \leq N.$$

It holds:

$$\begin{aligned} e_n &= y_n - y(t_n), \\ &= B_E y_{n-1} - y(t_n), \\ &= B_E(e_{n-1} + y(t_{n-1})) - y(t_n), \\ &= B_E e_{n-1} + B_E y(t_{n-1}) - y(t_n), \\ &= B_E e_{n-1} + \underbrace{\frac{k(B_E y(t_{n-1}) - y(t_n))}{k}}_{=: \eta_{n-1}}, \\ &= B_E e_{n-1} - k \underbrace{\frac{y(t_n) - B_E y(t_{n-1})}{k}}_{=: \eta_{n-1}}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the error can be split into two parts:

**Definition 7.9** (Error splitting of the model problem). *The error at step  $n$  can be decomposed as*

$$e_n := \underbrace{B_E e_{n-1}}_{\text{Stability}} - \underbrace{k \eta_{n-1}}_{\text{Consistency}}. \quad (44)$$

The first term, namely the stability, provides an idea how the previous error  $e_{n-1}$  is propagated from  $t_{n-1}$  to  $t_n$ . The second term  $\eta_{n-1}$  is the so-called truncation error (or local discretization error), which arises because the exact solution does not satisfy the numerical scheme and represents the consistency of the numerical scheme. Moreover,  $\eta_{n-1}$  yields the speed of convergence of the numerical scheme.

In fact, for the forward Euler scheme in (44), we observe for the truncation error:

$$\eta_{n-1} = \frac{y(t_n) - B_E y(t_{n-1})}{k} = \frac{y(t_n) - (1 + k\lambda)y(t_{n-1})}{k} \quad (45)$$

$$= \frac{y(t_n) - y(t_{n-1})}{k} - \lambda y(t_{n-1}) \quad (46)$$

$$= \frac{y(t_n) - y(t_{n-1})}{k} - y'(t_{n-1}). \quad (47)$$

Thus,

$$y'(t_{n-1}) = \frac{y(t_n) - y(t_{n-1})}{k} - \eta_{n-1}, \quad (48)$$

which is nothing else than the approximation of the first-order derivative with the help of a difference quotient plus the truncation error. We investigate these terms further in Section 7.5.4 and concentrate first on the stability estimates in the very next section.

### 7.5.3 Stability

The goal of this section is to control the term  $B_E = (1 + k\lambda)$ . Specifically, we will justify why  $|B_E| \leq 1$  should hold. The stability is often related to non-physical oscillations of the numerical solution. Otherwise speaking, a nonstable scheme shows artificial oscillations as for example illustrated in Figure 7.

We recapitulate (absolute) **stability** and **A-stability**. From the model problem

$$y'(t) = \lambda y(t), \quad y(t_0) = y_0, \quad \lambda \in \mathbb{C},$$

we know the solution  $y(t) = y_0 \exp(\lambda t)$ . For  $t \rightarrow \infty$  the solution is characterized by the sign of  $\operatorname{Re} \lambda$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{Re} \lambda < 0 &\Rightarrow |y(t)| = |y_0| \exp(\operatorname{Re} \lambda) \rightarrow 0, \\ \operatorname{Re} \lambda = 0 &\Rightarrow |y(t)| = |y_0| \exp(\operatorname{Re} \lambda) = |y_0|, \\ \operatorname{Re} \lambda > 0 &\Rightarrow |y(t)| = |y_0| \exp(\operatorname{Re} \lambda) \rightarrow \infty. \end{aligned}$$

For a *good* numerical scheme, the first case is particularly interesting whether such a scheme can produce a bounded discrete solution when the continuous solution has this property.

**Definition 7.10** ((Absolute) stability). A (one-step) method is absolute stable for  $\lambda k \neq 0$  if its application to the model problem produces in the case  $\operatorname{Re} \lambda \leq 0$  a sequence of bounded discrete solutions:  $\sup_{n \geq 0} |y_n| < \infty$ . To find the stability region, we work with the stability function  $R(z)$  where  $z = \lambda k$ . The region of absolute stability is defined as:

$$SR = \{z = \lambda k \in \mathbb{C} : |R(z)| \leq 1\}.$$

**Remark 7.11.** Recall that  $R(z) := B_E$ .

The stability functions to explicit, implicit Euler and trapezoidal rule are given by:

**Proposition 7.12.** For the simplest time-stepping schemes forward Euler, backward Euler and the trapezoidal rule, the stability functions  $R(z)$  read:

$$\begin{aligned} R(z) &= 1 + z, \\ R(z) &= \frac{1}{1 - z}, \\ R(z) &= \frac{1 + \frac{1}{2}z}{1 - \frac{1}{2}z}. \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* We take again the model problem  $y' = \lambda y$ . Let us discretize this problem with the forward Euler method:

$$\frac{y_n - y_{n-1}}{k} = \lambda y_{n-1} \quad (49)$$

$$\Rightarrow y_n = (y_{n-1} + \lambda k)y_{n-1} \quad (50)$$

$$= (1 + \lambda k)y_{n-1} \quad (51)$$

$$= (1 + z)y_{n-1} \quad (52)$$

$$= R(z)y_{n-1}. \quad (53)$$

For the implicit Euler method we obtain:

$$\frac{y_n - y_{n-1}}{k} = \lambda y_n \quad (54)$$

$$\Rightarrow y_n = (y_{n-1} + \lambda k) y_n \quad (55)$$

$$\Rightarrow y_n = \frac{1}{1 - \lambda k} y_{n-1} \quad (56)$$

$$\Rightarrow y_n = \underbrace{\frac{1}{1 - z}}_{=:R(z)} y_{n-1}. \quad (57)$$

The procedure for the trapezoidal rule is again the analogous.  $\square$

**Definition 7.13** (A-stability). A difference method is A-stable if its stability region is part of the absolute stability region:

$$\{z \in \mathbb{C} : \operatorname{Re} z \leq 0\} \subset SR,$$

here  $\operatorname{Re}$  denotes the real part of the complex number  $z$ . A brief introduction to complex numbers can be found in any calculus lecture dealing with those or also in the book [29].

In other words:

**Definition 7.14** (A-stability). Let  $\{y_n\}_n$  the sequence of solutions of a difference method for solving the ODE model problem. Then, this method is A-stable if for arbitrary  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}^- = \{\lambda : \operatorname{Re}(\lambda) \leq 0\}$  the approximate solutions are bounded (or even contractive) for arbitrary, but fixed, step size  $k$ . That is to say:

$$|y_{n+1}| \leq |y_n| < \infty \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

**Remark 7.15.** A-stability is attractive since in particular for stiff problems we can compute with arbitrary step sizes  $k$  and do not need any step size restriction.

**Proposition 7.16.** The explicit Euler scheme cannot be A-stable.

*Proof.* For the forward Euler scheme, it is  $R(z) = 1 + z$ . For  $|z| \rightarrow \infty$  it holds  $R(z) \rightarrow \infty$  which is a violation of the definition of A-stability.  $\square$

**Remark 7.17.** More generally, explicit schemes can never be A-stable.

**Example 7.18.** We illustrate the previous statements.

1. In Proposition 7.12 we have seen that for the forward Euler method it holds:

$$y_n = R(z)y_{n-1},$$

where  $R(z) = 1 + z$ . Thus, according to Definition 7.13 and 7.14, we obtain convergence when the sequence  $\{y_n\}$  is contracting:

$$|R(z)| \leq |1 + z| \leq 1. \quad (58)$$

Thus if the value of  $\lambda$  (in  $z = \lambda k$ ) is very big, we must choose a very small time step  $k$  in order to achieve  $|1 - \lambda k| < 1$ . Otherwise the sequence  $\{y_n\}_n$  will increase and thus diverge (recall that stability is defined with respect to decreasing parts of functions! Thus, the continuous solution is bounded and consequently the numerical approximation should be bounded, too). In conclusions, the forward Euler scheme is only conditionally stable, i.e., it is stable provided that (58) is fulfilled.

2. For the implicit Euler scheme, we see that a large  $\lambda$  and large  $k$  even both help to stabilize the iteration scheme (but be careful, the implicit Euler scheme, stabilizes actually too much. Because it computes contracting sequences also for case where the continuous solution would grow). Thus, no time step restriction is required. Consequently, the implicit Euler scheme is well suited for stiff problems with large parameters/coefficients  $\lambda$ .

**Remark 7.19.** The previous example shows that a careful design of the appropriate discretization scheme requires some work: there is no a priori best scheme. Some schemes require time step size restrictions in case of large coefficients (explicit Euler). On the other hand, the implicit Euler scheme does not need step restrictions but may have in certain cases too much damping. Which scheme should be employed for which problem depends finally on the problem itself and must be carefully thought for each problem again.

#### 7.5.4 Consistency / local discretization error - convergence order

We address now the second ‘error source’ in (44). The consistency determines the precision of the scheme and will finally carry over the local rate of consistency to the global rate of convergence. To determine the consistency we assume sufficient regularity of the exact solution such that we can apply Taylor expansion. The idea is then that all Taylor terms of combined to the discrete scheme. The lowest order remainder term determines finally the local consistency of the scheme.

We briefly formally recall Taylor expansion. For a function  $f(x)$  we develop at a point  $a \neq x$  the Taylor series:

$$T(f(x)) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(j)}(a)}{j!} (x-a)^j.$$

Let us continue with the forward Euler scheme and let us now specify the truncation error  $\eta_{n-1}$  in (48):

$$y'(t_{n-1}) + \eta_{n-1} = \frac{y(t_n) - y(t_{n-1})}{k}.$$

To this end, we need information about the solution at the old time step  $t^{n-1}$  in order to eliminate  $y(t_n)$ . Thus we use Taylor and develop  $y(t^n)$  at the time point  $t^{n-1}$ :

$$y(t^n) = y(t^{n-1}) + y'(t^{n-1})k + \frac{1}{2}y''(\tau^{n-1})k^2$$

We obtain the difference quotient of forward Euler by the following manipulation:

$$\frac{y(t^n) - y(t^{n-1})}{k} = y'(t^{n-1}) + \frac{1}{2}y''(\tau^{n-1})k.$$

We observe that the first terms correspond to (47). Thus the remainder term is

$$\frac{1}{2}y''(\tau^{n-1})k$$

and therefore the truncation error  $\eta_{n-1}$  can be estimated as

$$\|\eta_{n-1}\| \leq \max_{t \in [0, T]} \frac{1}{2} \|y''(t)\| k = O(k).$$

Therefore, the convergence order is  $k$  (namely linear convergence speed).

#### 7.5.5 Convergence

With the help of the two previous subsections, we can easily show the following error estimates:

**Theorem 7.20** (Convergence of implicit/explicit Euler). *We have*

$$\max_{t_n \in I} |y_n - y(t_n)| \leq c(T, y)k = O(k),$$

where  $k := \max_n k_n$ .

*Proof.* The proof does hold for both schemes, except that when we plug-in the stability estimate one should recall that the backward Euler scheme is unconditionally stable and the forward Euler scheme is only stable

when the step size  $k$  is sufficiently small. It holds for  $1 \leq n \leq N$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
 |y_n - y(t_n)| &= \|e_n\| = k \left\| \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} B_E^{n-k} \eta_k \right\| \\
 &\leq k \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \|B_E^{n-k} \eta_k\| \quad (\text{triangle inequality}) \\
 &\leq k \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \|B_E^{n-k}\| \|\eta_k\| \\
 &\leq k \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \|B_E^{n-k}\| Ck \quad (\text{consistency}) \\
 &\leq k \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} 1 Ck \quad (\text{stability}) \\
 &= kN Ck \\
 &= T Ck, \quad \text{where we used } k = T/N \\
 &= C(T, y)k \\
 &= O(k)
 \end{aligned}$$

□

In Section 7.6 we demonstrate in terms of a numerical example that the forward Euler scheme will fail when the step size restriction is not satisfied, consequently the scheme is not stable and therefore, the convergence result does not hold true.

**Theorem 7.21** (Convergence of trapezoidal rule). *We have*

$$\max_{t \in I} |y_n(t) - y(t)| \leq c(T, y)k^2 = O(k^2),$$

The main message is that the Euler schemes both converge with order  $O(k)$  (which is very slow) and the trapezoidal rule converges quadratically, i.e.,  $O(k^2)$ .

Let us justify the convergence order for the forward Euler scheme in more detail now.

**Theorem 7.22.** *Let  $I := [0, T]$  the time interval and  $f : I \times \mathbb{R}^d \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^d$  continuously differentiable and globally Lipschitz-continuous with respect to  $y$ :*

$$\|f(t, y) - f(t, z)\|_2 \leq L\|y - z\|_2$$

for all  $t \in I$  and  $y, z \in \mathbb{R}^d$ . Let  $y$  be the solution to

$$y' = f(t, y), \quad y(0) = y_0.$$

Furthermore let  $y_n, n = 1, \dots, n$  the approximations obtained with the Euler scheme at the nodal points  $t_n \in I$ . Then it holds

$$\|y(t_n) - y_n\|_2 \leq \frac{(1 + Lk)^n - 1}{2L} \|y''\| k \leq \frac{e^{LT} - 1}{2L} \|y''\| k = c(T, y)k = O(k),$$

for  $n = 0, \dots, N$ .

*Proof.* The proof follows [18], but consists in working out the steps shown at the beginning of Section 7.5, Section 7.5.3, and Section 7.5.4. □

## 7.6 Detailed numerical tests

In this section we demonstrate our algorithmic developments in terms of a numerical example. The programming code is written in octave (which is the open-source sister of MATLAB) presented in Section 13.2.

### 7.6.1 Problem statement and discussion of results

**Example 7.23.** *Solve our ODE model problem numerically. Let  $a = g - m$  be  $a = 0.25$  or  $a = -0.25$  or  $a = -10$  (three test scenarios). The IVP is given by:*

$$y' = ay, \quad y(2011) = 2.$$

*Use the forward Euler (FE), backward Euler (BE), and trapezoidal rule (CN) for the numerical approximation. Please observe the accuracy in terms of the discretization error and for (stiff) equations with a large negative coefficient  $a = -10 \ll 1$  the behavior of the three schemes.*

In order to calculate the convergence order  $\alpha$  from numerical results, we make the following derivation. Let  $P(k) \rightarrow P$  for  $k \rightarrow 0$  be a converging process and assume that

$$P(k) - \tilde{P} = O(k^\alpha).$$

Here  $\tilde{P}$  is either the exact limit  $P$  (in case it is known) or some ‘good’ approximation to it. Let us assume that three numerical solutions are known (this is the minimum number if the limit  $P$  is not known). That is

$$P(k), \quad P(k/2), \quad P(k/4).$$

Then, the convergence order can be calculated via the formal approach  $P(k) - \tilde{P} = ck^\alpha$  with the following formula:

**Proposition 7.24** (Computationally-obtained convergence order). *Given three numerically-obtained values  $P(k), P(k/2)$  and  $P(k/4)$ , the convergence order can be estimated as:*

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{\log(2)} \log \left( \left| \frac{P(k) - P(k/2)}{P(k/2) - P(k/4)} \right| \right). \quad (59)$$

*The order  $\alpha$  is an estimate and heuristic because we assumed *a priori* a given order, which strictly speaking we have to proof first.*

*Proof.* We assume:

$$\begin{aligned} P(k) - P(k/2) &= O(k^\alpha), \\ P(k/2) - P(k/4) &= O((k/2)^\alpha). \end{aligned}$$

First, we have

$$P(k/2) - P(k/4) = O((k/2)^\alpha) = \frac{1}{2^\alpha} O(k^\alpha)$$

We simply re-arrange:

$$\begin{aligned} P(k/2) - P(k/4) &= \frac{1}{2^\alpha} (P(k) - P(k/2)) \\ \Rightarrow 2^\alpha &= \frac{P(k) - P(k/2)}{P(k/2) - P(k/4)} \\ \Rightarrow \alpha &= \frac{1}{\log(2)} \frac{P(k) - P(k/2)}{P(k/2) - P(k/4)} \end{aligned}$$

□

In the following we present our results for the (absolute) error for test case 1 ( $a = 0.25$ ) on such three mesh levels:

Scheme	#steps	k	Absolute error
<hr/>			
FE err.:	8	0.36	+0.13786
BE err.:	8	0.36	-0.16188
CN err.:	8	0.36	-0.0023295
FE err.:	16	0.18	+0.071567
BE err.:	16	0.18	-0.077538
CN err.:	16	0.18	-0.00058168
FE err.:	32	0.09	+0.036483
BE err.:	32	0.09	-0.037974
CN err.:	32	0.09	-0.00014538
<hr/>			

- The absolute error at the end time  $T$  in the forth column is computed as

$$e_N = |y(T) - y_N|,$$

where  $y(T)$  is the exact solution and  $y_N$  the numerical approximation at the end time value at the final numerical step  $N$ .

- In the second column, i.e., 8, 16, 32, the number of steps (= number of intervals, i.e., so called mesh cells - speaking in PDE terminology) are given. In the column after, the errors are provided.
- In order to compute numerically the convergence order  $\alpha$  with the help of formula (59), we work with  $k = k_{max} = 0.36$ . Then we identify in the above table that  $P(k_{max}) = P(0.36) = |y(T) - y_8|$ ,  $P(k_{max}/2) = P(0.18) = |y(T) - y_{16}|$  and  $P(k_{max}/4) = P(0.09) = |y(T) - y_{32}|$ .
- We monitor that doubling the number of intervals (i.e., halving the step size  $k$ ) reduces the error in the forward and backward Euler scheme by a factor of 2. This is (almost) linear convergence, which is confirmed by using Formula (59) yielding  $\alpha = 0.91804$ . The trapezoidal rule is much more accurate (for instance using  $n = 8$  the error is 0.2% rather than 13 – 16%) and we observe that the error is reduced by a factor of 4. Thus quadratic convergence is detected. Here the ‘exact’ order on these three mesh levels is  $\alpha = 1.9967$ .
- A further observation is that the forward Euler scheme is unstable for  $n = 16$  and  $a = -10$  and has a zig-zag curve, whereas the other two schemes follow the exact solution and the decreasing exp-function. But for sufficiently small step sizes, the forward Euler scheme is also stable which we know from our A-stability calculations. These step sizes can be explicitly determined for this ODE model problem and shown below.

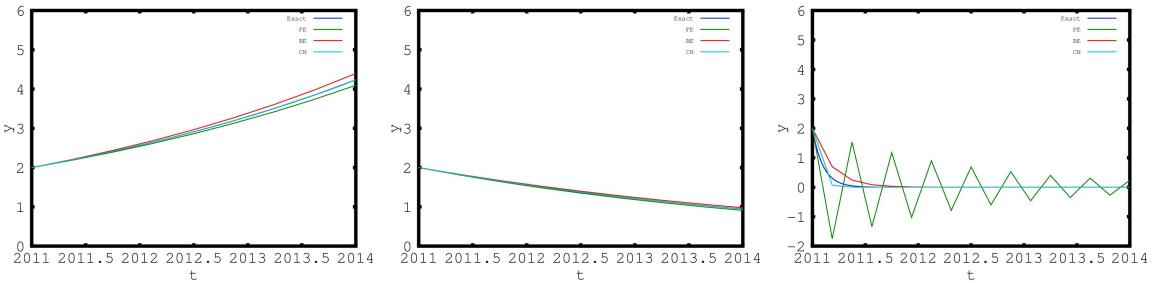


Figure 6: Example 7.23: on the left, the solution to test 1 is shown. In the middle, test 2 is plotted. On the right, the solution of test 3 with  $n = 16$  (number of intervals) is shown. Here,  $n = 16$  corresponds to a step size  $k = 0.18$  which is slightly below the critical step size for convergence (see Section 7.6.2). Thus we observe the unstable behavior of the forward Euler method, but also see slow convergence towards the continuous solution.

### 7.6.2 Treatment of the instability of the forward Euler method

With the help of Example 7.18 let us understand how to choose stable step sizes  $k$  for the forward Euler method. The convergence interval reads:

$$|1 + z| \leq 1 \Rightarrow |1 + ak| \leq 1$$

In test 3,  $a = -10$ , which yields:

$$|1 + z| \leq 1 \Rightarrow |1 - 10k| \leq 1$$

Thus, we need to choose a  $k$  that fulfills the previous relation. In this case this,  $k < 0.2$  is calculated. This means that for all  $k < 0.2$  we should have convergence of the forward Euler method and for  $k \geq 0.2$  non-convergence (and in particular no stability!). We perform the following additional tests:

- Test 3a:  $n = 10$ , yielding  $k = 0.3$ ;
- Test 3b:  $n = 15$ , yielding  $k = 0.2$ ; exactly the boundary of the stability interval;
- Test 3c:  $n = 16$ , yielding  $k = 0.18$ ; from before;
- Test 3d:  $n = 20$ , yielding  $k = 0.15$ .

The results of test 3a,3b,3d are provided in Figure 7 and visualize very nicely the theoretically predicted behavior.

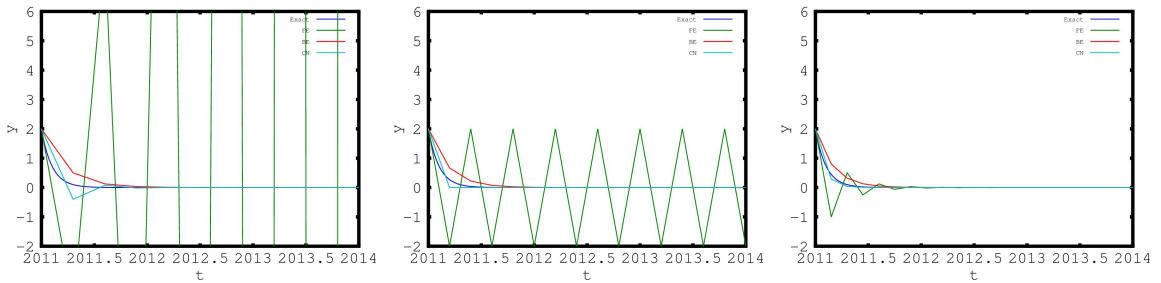


Figure 7: Example 7.23: tests 3a,3b,3d: Blow-up, constant zig-zag non-convergence, and convergence of the forward Euler method.

**Exercise 4.** Consider the ODE-IVP:

$$y'(t) = ay(t), \quad y(t_0) = 7,$$

where  $t_0 = 5$  and  $T = 11$ .

1. Implement the backward Euler scheme. and set the model parameter to  $a = 2$
2. Run a second test with  $a = -2$ .
3. Implement the forward Euler scheme. What is the critical step size (Hint: Determine the stability interval).
4. Implement the Crank-Nicolson scheme.
5. Perform a computational analysis and detect the convergence order.

## 7.7 Runge-Kutta methods

A drawback of the Euler methods and to some extend of the trapezoidal rule as well is the low order and slow convergence. This has been justified both theoretically and in terms of the previous example.

In this section, we briefly motivate the idea how to obtain higher-order methods. Our model problem is as before:

$$\begin{aligned} y'(t) &= f(t, y), \quad t \in I, \\ y(t_0) &= y_0. \end{aligned}$$

The explicit Euler methods reads:

$$y^{n+1} = y^n + kf(t^n, y^n), \quad k = t^{n+1} - t^n.$$

The basic idea to obtain higher-order methods is pretty simple: replace  $f(\cdot)$  by a general function  $F(\cdot)$ :

$$y^{n+1} = y^n + kF(k, t^n, y^n, y^{n+1}), \quad k = t^{n+1} - t^n.$$

The question is how  $F(\cdot)$  does look like? Well, we use again Taylor and assume that  $f \in C^\infty$ :

$$y(t^{n+1}) = y(t^n) + y'(t^n)k + \frac{1}{2}y''(t^n)k^2 + \dots = \sum_{j=1}^s \frac{1}{j!}y^{(j)}(t^n)k^j.$$

We now use the ODE:

$$y' = f(t, y) \rightarrow y'' = f'(t, y) \rightarrow y''' = f''(t, y), \dots$$

Then the Taylor expansion can be written as:

$$y(t^{n+1}) = y(t^n) + k \underbrace{\sum_{j=1}^s \frac{1}{j!}y^{(j-1)}(t^n)k^{j-1}}_{=:F(k, t^n, y^n, y^{n+1})}.$$

In principle we would be finished now. There is however a very practical difficulty; namely the higher-order derivatives of  $f(t, y)$ . For complicated functions they become tedious to be evaluated - especially if we think to use a finite difference scheme as time stepping scheme for a PDE (see Section 9). Thus we want to get rid of the  $f(t, y)$  derivatives. The idea is to replace  $f^{(j-1)}$  be difference quotients. This will lead to a recursive iteration. The ansatz is:

$$F(k, t^n, y^n, y^{n+1}) := \sum_{j=1}^s b_j k_j$$

with

$$k_j := f(t^n + c_j k, \eta_j), \quad \sum_{j=1}^s b_j = 1.$$

The trick is to determine  $b_j, c_j$  and  $\eta_j$ , where  $\eta_j$  can be further derived as (using the previously mentioned recursion and difference quotients):

$$\eta_j = y^n + k \sum_{\nu=1}^s a_{j\nu} \underbrace{f(t^n + c_\nu k, \eta_\nu)}_{=k_\nu}, \quad \sum_{\nu=1}^s a_{j\nu} = c_j, \quad 1, \dots, s.$$

Let us pause for a moment and denote the different coefficients we have introduced so far:

- $\eta_j$ : stages
- $s$ : stage number
- $c_j$ : nodes

- $b_j$ : weights
- $a_{j\nu}$  are the entries of the so-called Runge-Kutta matrix.

**Remark 7.25** (Explicit Runge-Kutta schemes). If  $a_{j\nu} = 0$  for all  $\nu \geq j$ , we obtain explicite Runge-Kutta schemes; otherwise the scheme will be implicit.

The previous coefficients will be determined in such a way that we obtain (hopefully) the optimal order  $m = s$ :

$$\sum_{j=1}^s b_j k_j = \sum_{j=1}^s \frac{k^{j-1}}{j!} f^{(j-1)}(t^n) + O(k^m).$$

To determine the consistency order we proceed as for the Euler schemes and plug the exact solution into the numerical scheme. The local truncation error is then given as:

$$\tau^n := \frac{y(t^{n+1}) - y(t^n)}{k} - F(k, t^n, y(t^n), y(t^{n+1})).$$

**Example 7.26.** Let us illustrate the previous developments for two cases (the reader can find many more in the cited literature):

1.  $s = 1$  (explicit Euler):  $c_1 = a_{11} = 0$  and  $b_1 = 1$  yielding  $k_1 = f(t^n, y^n)$ .
2.  $s = 4$  (classical fourth-order Runge-Kutta):

$$y^{n+1} = y^n + \frac{1}{6} k [k_1 + k_2 + k_3 + k_4].$$

Here we four stages ( $s = 4$ ) and therefore the consistency order  $m = 4$ . Furthermore:

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 &= f(t^n, y^n), \\ k_2 &= f(t^{n+0.5}, y^n + \frac{1}{2} k k_1), \\ k_3 &= f(t^{n+0.5}, y^n + \frac{1}{2} k k_2), \\ k_4 &= f(t^{n+1}, y^n + k k_3). \end{aligned}$$

One can also derive a tableau of the coefficients as follows:

$c$	$A$
	$b^T$

**Example 7.27.** Using the previous tableau we can express some schemes as follows:

1. Explicit Euler:

0	0
	1

2. Implicit Euler:

1	1
	1

3. Runge method:

0	0	0
1/2	1/2	0
0	0	1

4. Runge-Kutta fourth order (RK4):

0	0	0	0	0
1/2	1/2	0	0	0
1/2	0	1/2	0	0
1	0	0	1	0
	1/6	1/3	1/3	1/6

**Exercise 5.** Implement the Runge-Kutta method of order  $s = 4$  for the above problem given in Example 7.23. Afterwards, carry out the convergence analysis and verify whether the expected order is correct.

## 8 Finite elements for PDE boundary values problems

In this section, we concentrate on boundary value problems. We change now two things at the same time:

- Considering boundary value problems (BVP) rather than initial-value problems (IVP);
- Using finite elements (FE) rather than finite differences (FD) for discretization.

Of course the other two combinations (IVP solved by FE and BVP solved by FD) are also possible. In fact FD for solving BVP have been very popular in the past and are still important because a quick implementation is possible. On the other hand finite elements have advantages for more general geometries, unstructured grids, complicated PDEs and PDE systems, and allow for a deep mathematical theory. Moreover, the finite element method can work with less smoothness of the underlying functions. A good overview has been compiled in [17].

### 8.1 Model problem: 1D Poisson

We consider the model problem (D)<sup>1</sup>:

$$-u'' = f \quad \text{in } \Omega = (0, 1), \quad (60)$$

$$u(0) = u(1) = 0. \quad (61)$$

Please make yourself clear that this is nothing else than expressing Formulation 6.10 in 1D. Thus, we deal with a second-order elliptic problem.

### 8.2 Construction of an exact solution (only possible for simple cases!)

In this section, we construct again an exact solution first. In 1D<sup>2</sup>, we can derive the explicit solution of (60). First we have

$$u'(\tilde{x}) = - \int_0^{\tilde{x}} f(s) ds + C_1$$

where  $C_1$  is a positive constant. Further integration yields

$$u(x) = \int_0^x u'(\tilde{x}) d\tilde{x} = - \int_0^x \left( \int_0^{\tilde{x}} f(s) ds \right) d\tilde{x} + C_1 x + C_2$$

with another integration constant  $C_2$ . We have two unknown constants  $C_1, C_2$  but also two given boundary conditions which allows us to determine  $C_1$  and  $C_2$ .

$$0 = u(0) = - \int_0^x \left( \int_0^{\tilde{x}} f(s) ds \right) d\tilde{x} + C_1 \cdot 0 + C_2$$

yields  $C_2 = 0$ . For  $C_1$ , using  $u(1) = 0$ , we calculate:

$$C_1 = \int_0^1 \left( \int_0^{\tilde{x}} f(s) ds \right) d\tilde{x}.$$

Thus we obtain as final solution:

$$u(x) = - \int_0^x \left( \int_0^{\tilde{x}} f(s) ds \right) d\tilde{x} + x \left( \int_0^1 \left( \int_0^{\tilde{x}} f(s) ds \right) d\tilde{x} \right).$$

Thus, for a given right hand side  $f$  we obtain an explicit expression. For instance  $f = 1$  yields:

$$u(x) = \frac{1}{2}(-x^2 + x).$$

<sup>1</sup> (D) stands for differential problem. (M) stands for minimization problem. (V) stands for variational problem.

<sup>2</sup>In higher dimensions, we still can construct analytical solutions for simple geometries, but comes easily challenging (impossible!) for more complicated settings and equations.

It is trivial to double-check that this solution also satisfies the boundary conditions:  $u(0) = u(1) = 0$ . Furthermore, we see by differentiation that the original equation is obtained:

$$u'(x) = -x + \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow -u''(x) = 1.$$

**Exercise 6.** Let  $f = -1$ .

- Compute  $C_1$ ;
- Compute  $u(x)$ ;
- Check that  $u(x)$  satisfies the boundary conditions;
- Check that  $u(x)$  satisfies the PDE.

### 8.3 Equivalent formulations

We first discuss that the solution of (60) (D) is also the solution of a minimization problem (M) and a variational problem (V). To formulate these (equivalent) problems, we first introduce the scalar product

$$(v, w) = \int_0^1 v(x)w(x) dx.$$

Furthermore we introduce the linear space

$$V := \{v \mid v \in C[0, 1], v' \text{ is piecewise continuous and bounded on } [0, 1], v(0) = v(1) = 0\}. \quad (62)$$

We also introduce the linear functional  $F : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$F(v) = \frac{1}{2}(v', v') - (f, v).$$

We state

**Definition 8.1.** We deal with three (equivalent) problems:

- (D) Find  $u \in C^2$  such that  $-u'' = f$  with  $u(0) = u(1) = 0$ ;
- (M) Find  $u \in V$  such that  $F(u) \leq F(v)$  for all  $v \in V$ ;
- (V) Find  $u \in V$  such that  $(u', v') = (f, v)$  for all  $v \in V$ .

In physics, the quantity  $F(v)$  stands for the **total potential energy** of the underlying model. Moreover, the first term in  $F(v)$  denotes the internal elastic energy and  $(f, v)$  the load potential. Therefore, formulation (M) corresponds to the fundamental **principle of minimal potential energy** and the variational problem (V) to the **principle of virtual work** (e.g., [9]). The proofs of their equivalence will be provided in the following.

**Remark 8.2** (Euler-Lagrange equations). When (V) is derived from (M), we also say that (V) is the **Euler-Lagrange equation** related to (M).

In the following we show that the three problems (D), (M), (V) are equivalent.

**Proposition 8.3.** It holds

$$(D) \rightarrow (V).$$

*Proof.* We multiply  $u'' = f$  with an arbitrary function  $\phi$  (a so-called **test function**) from the space  $V$  defined in (62). Then we integrate over the interval  $\Omega = (0, 1)$  yielding

$$-u'' = f \quad (63)$$

$$\Rightarrow - \int_{\Omega} u'' \phi dx = \int_{\Omega} f \phi dx \quad (64)$$

$$\Rightarrow \int_{\Omega} u' \phi' dx - u'(1)\phi(1) + u'(0)\phi(0) = \int_{\Omega} f \phi dx \quad (65)$$

$$\Rightarrow \int_{\Omega} u' \phi' dx = \int_{\Omega} f \phi dx \quad \forall \phi \in V. \quad (66)$$

In the second last term, we used integration by parts.

The boundary terms vanish because  $\phi \in V$ . This shows that

$$\int_{\Omega} u' \phi' dx = \int_{\Omega} f \phi dx$$

is a solution of  $(V)$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 8.4.** *It holds*

$$(V) \leftrightarrow (M).$$

*Proof.* We first assume that  $u$  is a solution to  $(V)$ . Let  $\phi \in V$  and set  $w = \phi - u$  such that  $\phi = u + w$  and  $w \in V$ . We obtain

$$\begin{aligned} F(\phi) &= F(u + w) = \frac{1}{2}(u' + w', u' + w') - (f, u + w) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(u', u') - (f, u) + (u', w') - (f, w) + \frac{1}{2}(w', w') \geq F(u) \end{aligned}$$

We use now the fact that  $(V)$  holds true, namely

$$(u', w') - (f, w) = 0.$$

and also that  $(w', w') \geq 0$ . Thus, we have shown that  $u$  is a solution to  $(M)$ . We show now that  $(M) \rightarrow (V)$  holds true as well. For any  $\phi \in V$  and  $\varepsilon \in \mathbb{R}$  we have

$$F(u) \leq F(u + \varepsilon\phi),$$

because  $u + \varepsilon\phi \in V$ . We differentiate with respect to  $\varepsilon$  and show that  $(V)$  is a first order necessary condition to  $(M)$  with a minimum at  $\varepsilon = 0$ . To do so, we define

$$g(\varepsilon) := F(u + \varepsilon\phi) = \frac{1}{2}(u', u') + \varepsilon(u', \phi') + \frac{\varepsilon^2}{2}(\phi', \phi') - (f, u) - \varepsilon(f, \phi).$$

Thus

$$g'(\varepsilon) = (u', \phi') + \varepsilon(\phi', \phi') - (f, \phi).$$

A minimum is obtained for  $\varepsilon = 0$ . Consequently,

$$g'(0) = 0.$$

In detail:

$$(u', \phi') - (f, \phi) = 0,$$

which is nothing else than the solution of  $(V)$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 8.5.** *The solution  $u$  to  $(V)$  is unique.*

*Proof.* Assume that  $u_1$  and  $u_2$  are solutions to  $(V)$  with

$$\begin{aligned} (u'_1, \phi') &= (f, \phi) \quad \forall \phi \in V, \\ (u'_2, \phi') &= (f, \phi) \quad \forall \phi \in V. \end{aligned}$$

We subtract these solutions and obtain:

$$(u'_1 - u'_2, \phi') = 0.$$

We choose as test function  $\phi' = u'_1 - u'_2$  and obtain

$$(u'_1 - u'_2, u'_1 - u'_2) = 0.$$

Thus:

$$u'_1(x) - u'_2(x) = (u_1 - u_2)'(x) = 0.$$

Since the difference of the derivatives is zero, this means that the difference of the functions themselves is constant:

$$(u_1 - u_2)(x) = \text{const}$$

Using the boundary conditions  $u(0) = u(1) = 0$ , yields

$$(u_1 - u_2)(x) = 0.$$

Thus  $u_1 = u_2$ . □

**Remark 8.6.** *The last statements are related to the definiteness of the norm. It holds:*

$$\|u\|_{L^2}^2 = \int_{\Omega} u^2 dx.$$

Thus the results follow directly because

$$\|u\| = 0 \Leftrightarrow u = 0.$$

**Proposition 8.7.** *It holds*

$$(V) \rightarrow (D).$$

*Proof.* We assume that  $u$  is a solution to  $(V)$ , i.e.,

$$(u', \phi') = (f, \phi) \quad \forall \phi \in V.$$

If we assume sufficient regularity of  $u$  (in particular  $u \in C^2$ ), then  $u''$  exists and we can integrate backwards. Moreover, we use that  $\phi(0) = \phi(1) = 0$  since  $\phi \in V$ . Then:

$$(-u'' - f, \phi) = 0 \quad \forall \phi \in V.$$

Since we assumed sufficient regularity for  $u''$  and  $f$  the difference is continuous. We can now apply the fundamental principle (see Proposition 8.9):

$$w \in C(\Omega) \Rightarrow \int_{\Omega} w \phi dx = 0 \Rightarrow w \equiv 0.$$

We proof this result later. Before, we obtain

$$(-u'' - f, \phi) = 0 \Rightarrow -u'' - f = 0,$$

which yields the desired expression. Since we know that  $(D) \rightarrow (V)$  holds true,  $u$  has the assumed regularity properties and we have shown the equivalence. □

It remains to state and proof the fundamental lemma of calculus of variations. To this end, we introduce

**Definition 8.8** (Continuous functions with compact support). *Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be an open domain.*

- *The set of continuous functions from  $\Omega$  to  $\mathbb{R}$  with **compact support** is denoted by  $C_c(\Omega)$ . Such functions vanish on the boundary.*
- *The set of **smooth functions** (infinitely continuously differentiable) with compact support is denoted by  $C_c^\infty(\Omega)$ .*

**Proposition 8.9** (Fundamental lemma of calculus of variations). *Let  $\Omega = [a, b]$  be a compact interval and let  $w \in C(\Omega)$ . Let  $\phi \in C^\infty$  with  $\phi(a) = \phi(b) = 0$ , i.e.,  $\phi \in C_c^\infty(\Omega)$ . If for all  $\phi$  it holds*

$$\int_{\Omega} w(x) \phi(x) dx = 0,$$

*then,  $w \equiv 0$  in  $\Omega$ .*

*Proof.* We perform an indirect proof. We suppose that there exist a point  $x_0 \in \Omega$  with  $w(x_0) \neq 0$ . Without loss of generality, we can assume  $w(x_0) > 0$ . Since  $w$  is continuous, there exists a small (open) neighborhood  $\omega \subset \Omega$  with  $w(x) > 0$  for all  $x \in \omega$ ; otherwise  $w \equiv 0$  in  $\Omega \setminus \omega$ . Let  $\phi$  now be a positive test function (recall that  $\phi$  can be arbitrary, specifically positive if we wish) in  $\Omega$  and thus also in  $\omega$ . Then:

$$\int_{\Omega} w(x)\phi(x) dx = \int_{\omega} w(x)\phi(x) dx.$$

But this is a contradiction to the hypothesis on  $w$ . Thus  $w(x) = 0$  for all in  $x \in \omega$ . Extending this result to all open neighborhoods in  $\Omega$  we arrive at the final result.  $\square$

## 8.4 The weak form: defining a bilinear form and a linear form

We continue to consider the variational form in this section and provide more definitions and notation.

We recall the key idea:

- multiply the strong form ( $D$ ) with a test function,
- integrate,
- apply integration by parts on second-order terms.

The last operation ‘weakens’ the derivative information because rather evaluating 2nd order derivatives, we only need to evaluate a 1st order derivative on the trial function and another 1st order derivative on the test function.

We recall the procedure how to obtain a weak form:

$$-u'' = f \tag{67}$$

$$\Rightarrow - \int_{\Omega} u'' \phi dx = \int_{\Omega} f \phi dx \tag{68}$$

$$\Rightarrow \int_{\Omega} u' \phi' dx - \int_{\partial\Omega} \partial_n u \phi ds = \int_{\Omega} f \phi dx \tag{69}$$

$$\Rightarrow \int_{\Omega} u' \phi' dx = \int_{\Omega} f \phi dx. \tag{70}$$

To summarize we have:

$$\int_{\Omega} u' \phi' dx = \int_{\Omega} f \phi dx \tag{71}$$

A common short-hand notation in mathematics is to use parentheses for  $L^2$  scalar products:  $\int_{\Omega} ab dx =: (a, b)$ :

$$(u', \phi') = (f, \phi) \tag{72}$$

A mathematically-correct statement is:

**Formulation 8.10.** *Find  $u \in V$  such that*

$$(u', \phi') = (f, \phi) \quad \forall \phi \in V. \tag{73}$$

In the following, a very common notation is introduced. First, we recall concepts known from linear algebra:

**Definition 8.11** (Linear form and bilinear form). *If  $V$  is a linear space,  $l$  is a **linear form** on  $V$  if  $l : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  or in other words  $l(v) \in \mathbb{R}$  for  $v \in V$ . Moreover,  $l$  is linear:*

$$l(av + bw) = al(v) + bl(w) \quad \forall a, b \in \mathbb{R}, \quad \forall v, w \in V.$$

A formulation is a **bilinear form**<sup>3</sup> on  $V \times V$  if  $a : V \times V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $a(v, w) \in \mathbb{R}$  for  $v, w \in V$  and  $a(v, w)$  is linear in each argument, i.e., for  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $u, v, w \in V$ , it holds

$$\begin{aligned} a(u, \alpha v + \beta w) &= \alpha a(u, v) + \beta a(u, w), \\ a(\alpha u + \beta v, w) &= \alpha a(u, w) + \beta a(v, w). \end{aligned}$$

A bilinear form is said to be **symmetric** if

$$a(u, v) = a(v, u).$$

A symmetric bilinear form  $a(\cdot, \cdot)$  on  $V \times V$  defines a **scalar product** on  $V$  if

$$a(v, v) > 0 \quad \forall v \in V, v \neq 0.$$

The associated **norm** is denoted by  $\|\cdot\|_a$  and defined by

$$\|v\|_a := \sqrt{a(v, v)} \quad \text{for } v \in V.$$

**Definition 8.12** (Frobenius scalar product). For vector-valued functions in second-order problems, we need to work with a scalar product defined for matrices because their gradients are matrices. Here the natural form is the Frobenius scalar product, which is defined as:

$$\langle A, B \rangle_F = A : B = \sum_i \sum_j a_{ij} b_{ij}$$

The Frobenius scalar product induces the Frobenius norm:

$$\|A\|_F = \sqrt{\langle A, A \rangle}.$$

**Remark 8.13.** For vector-valued PDEs (such as elasticity, Stokes or Navier-Stokes), we formulate in compact form:

$$a(u, \phi) = l(\phi)$$

with some  $l(\phi)$  and

$$a(u, \phi) = \int_{\Omega} \nabla u : \nabla \phi \, dx$$

where  $\nabla u : \nabla \phi$  is then evaluated in terms of the Frobenius scalar product.

**Definition 8.14** (Bilinear and linear forms of the continuous Poisson problem). For the Poisson problem, we can define:

$$\begin{aligned} a(u, \phi) &= (u', \phi'), \\ l(\phi) &= (f, \phi). \end{aligned}$$

We shall state the variational form of Poisson's problem in terms of  $a(\cdot, \cdot)$  and  $l(\cdot)$ :

**Formulation 8.15** (Variational Poisson problem on the continuous level). Find  $u \in V$  such that

$$a(u, \phi) = l(\phi) \quad \forall \phi \in V, \tag{74}$$

where  $a(\cdot, \cdot)$  and  $l(\cdot)$  are defined in Definition 8.14. The unknown function  $u$  is called the **trial** or (**ansatz**) function whereas  $\phi$  is the so-called **test function**.

---

<sup>3</sup>For nonlinear problems we deal with a semi-linear form, which is only linear in one argument.

## 8.5 Finite elements in 1D

In the following we want to concentrate how to compute a discrete solution. As in the previous chapter, this, in principle, allows us to address even more complicated situations and also higher spatial dimensions. The principle of the FEM is rather simple:

- Introduce a mesh  $\mathcal{T}_h := \bigcup K_i$  (where  $K_i$  denote the single mesh elements) of the given domain  $\Omega = (0, 1)$  with mesh size (diameter/length) parameter  $h$
- Define on each mesh element  $K_i := [x_i, x_{i+1}], i = 0, \dots, n$  polynomials for trial and test functions. These polynomials must form a basis in a space  $V_h$  and they should reflect certain conditions on the mesh edges;
- Use the variational (or weak) form of the given problem and derive a discrete version;
- Evaluate the arising integrals;
- Collect all contributions on all  $K_i$  leading to a linear equation system  $AU = B$ ;
- Solve this linear equation system; the solution vector  $U = (u_0, \dots, u_n)^T$  contains the discrete solution at the nodal points  $x_0, \dots, x_n$ ;
- Verify the correctness of the solution  $U$ .

### 8.5.1 The mesh

Let us start with the mesh. We introduce nodal points and divide  $\Omega = (0, 1)$  into

$$x_0 = 0 < x_1 < x_2 < \dots < x_n < x_{n+1} = 1.$$

In particular, we can work with a uniform mesh in which all nodal points have equidistant distance:

$$x_j = jh, \quad h = \frac{1}{n+1}, \quad 0 \leq j \leq n+1, \quad h = x_{j+1} - x_j.$$

**Remark 8.16.** An important research topic is to organize the points  $x_j$  in certain non-uniform ways in order to reduce the discrete error.

### 8.5.2 Linear finite elements

In the following we denote  $P_k$  the space that contains all polynomials up to order  $k$  with coefficients in  $\mathbb{R}$ :

**Definition 8.17.**

$$P_k := \left\{ \sum_{i=0}^k a_i x^i \mid a_i \in \mathbb{R} \right\}.$$

In particular we will work with the space of linear polynomials

$$P_1 := \{a_0 + a_1 x \mid a_0, a_1 \in \mathbb{R}\}.$$

A finite element is now a function localized to an element  $K_i \in \mathcal{T}_h$  and uniquely defined by the values in the nodal points  $x_i, x_{i+1}$ .

We then define the space:

$$V_h^{(1)} = V_h := \{v \in C[0, 1] \mid v|_{K_i} \in P_1, K_i := [x_i, x_{i+1}], 0 \leq i \leq n, v(0) = v(1) = 0\}.$$

The boundary conditions are build into the space through  $v(0) = v(1) = 0$ . This is an important concept that Dirichlet boundary conditions will not appear explicitly later, but are contained in the function spaces.

All functions inside  $V_h$  are so called **shape functions** and can be represented by so-called **hat functions**. Hat functions are specifically linear functions on each element  $K_i$ . Attaching them yields a hat in the geometrical sense.

For  $j = 1, \dots, n$  we define:

$$\phi_j(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \notin [x_{j-1}, x_{j+1}] \\ \frac{x-x_{j-1}}{x_j-x_{j-1}} & \text{if } x \in [x_{j-1}, x_j] \\ \frac{x_{j+1}-x}{x_{j+1}-x_j} & \text{if } x \in [x_j, x_{j+1}] \end{cases} \quad (75)$$

with the property

$$\phi_j(x_i) = \begin{cases} 1 & i = j \\ 0 & i \neq j \end{cases}. \quad (76)$$

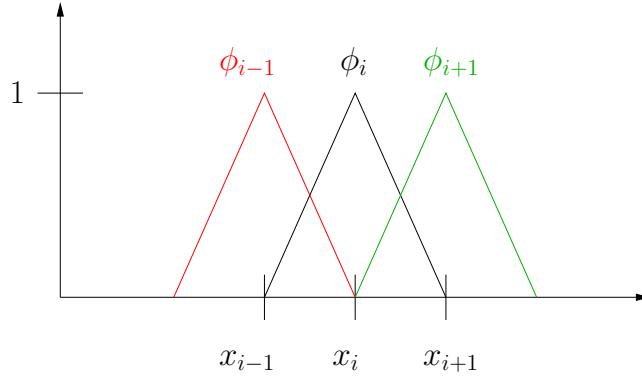


Figure 8: Hat functions.

For a uniform step size  $h = x_j - x_{j-1} = x_{j+1} - x_j$  we obtain

$$\phi_j(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \notin [x_{j-1}, x_{j+1}] \\ \frac{x-x_{j-1}}{h} & \text{if } x \in [x_{j-1}, x_j] \\ \frac{x_{j+1}-x}{h} & \text{if } x \in [x_j, x_{j+1}] \end{cases}$$

and for its derivative:

$$\phi'_j(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \notin [x_{j-1}, x_{j+1}] \\ +\frac{1}{h} & \text{if } x \in [x_{j-1}, x_j] \\ -\frac{1}{h} & \text{if } x \in [x_j, x_{j+1}] \end{cases}$$

**Lemma 8.18.** *The space  $V_h$  is a subspace of  $V := C[0, 1]$  and has dimension  $n$  (because we deal with  $n$  basis functions). Thus the such constructed finite element method is a **conforming** method. Furthermore, for each function  $v_h \in V_h$  we have a unique representation:*

$$v_h(x) = \sum_{j=1}^n v_{h,j} \phi_j(x) \quad \forall x \in [0, 1], \quad v_{h,j} \in \mathbb{R}.$$

*Proof.* Sketch: The unique representation is clear, because in the nodal points it holds  $\phi_j(x_i) = \delta_{ij}$ , where  $\delta_{ij}$  is the Kronecker symbol with  $\delta_{ij} = 1$  for  $i = j$  and 0 otherwise.  $\square$

The function  $v_h(x)$  connects the discrete values  $v_{h,j} \in \mathbb{R}$  and in particular the values between two support points  $x_j$  and  $x_{j+1}$  can be evaluated.

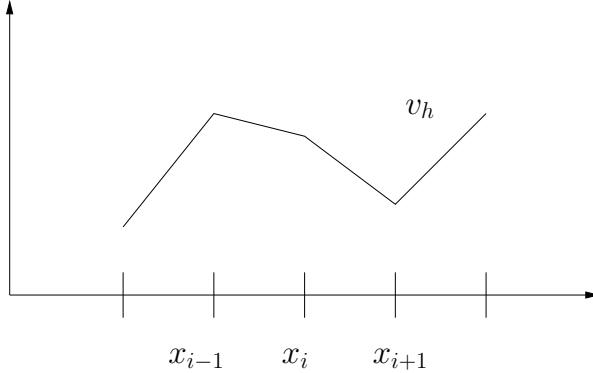


Figure 9: The function  $v_h \in V_h$ .

**Remark 8.19.** The finite element method introduced above is a Lagrange method, since the basis functions  $\phi_j$  are defined only through its values at the nodal points without using derivative information (which would result in Hermite polynomials).

### 8.5.3 The process to construct the specific form of the shape functions

In the previous construction, we have hidden the process how to find the specific form of  $\phi_j(x)$ . For 1D it is more or less clear and we would accept the  $\phi_j(x)$  really has the form as it has in (75). In  $\mathbb{R}^n$  this task is a bit of work. To understand this procedure, we explain the process in detail. Here we first address the defining properties of a finite element (see also Section 8.5.6):

- Intervals  $[x_i, x_{i+1}]$ ;
- A linear polynomial  $\phi(x) = a_0 + a_1 x$ ;
- Nodal values at  $x_i$  and  $x_{i+1}$  (the so-called degrees of freedom).

Later only these properties are stated (see also the general literature in Section 1) and one has to construct the specific  $\phi(x)$  such as for example in (75). Thus, the main task consists in finding the unknown coefficients  $a_0$  and  $a_1$  of the shape function. The key property is (76) (also valid in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  in order to have a small support) and therefore we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}\phi_j(x_j) &= a_0 + a_1 x_j = 1, \\ \phi_j(x_i) &= a_0 + a_1 x_i = 0.\end{aligned}$$

To determine  $a_0$  and  $a_1$  we have to solve a small linear equation system:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & x_j \\ 1 & x_i \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_0 \\ a_1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We obtain

$$a_1 = -\frac{1}{x_i - x_j}$$

and

$$a_0 = \frac{x_i}{x_i - x_j}.$$

Then:

$$\phi_j(x) = a_0 + a_1 x = \frac{x_i - x}{x_i - x_j}.$$

At this stage we have now to distinguish whether  $x_j := x_{i-1}$  or  $x_j := x_{i+1}$  or  $|i - j| > 1$  yielding the three cases in (75).

**Remark 8.20.** Of course, for higher-order polynomials and higher-order problems in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , the matrix system to determining the coefficients becomes larger. However, in all these state-of-the-art FEM software packages, the shape functions are already implemented.

**Remark 8.21.** A very practical and detailed derivation of finite elements in different dimensions can be found in [31].

#### 8.5.4 The discrete weak form

We have set-up a mesh and local polynomial functions with a unique representation, all these developments result in a ‘finite element’. Now, we use the variational formulation and derive the discrete counterpart:

**Formulation 8.22.** Find  $u_h \in V_h$  such that

$$(u'_h, \phi'_h) = (f, \phi_h) \quad \forall \phi_h \in V_h. \quad (77)$$

Or in the previously introduced compact form:

**Formulation 8.23** (Variational Poisson problem on the discrete level). Find  $u_h \in V_h$  such that

$$a(u_h, \phi_h) = l(\phi_h) \quad \forall \phi_h \in V_h, \quad (78)$$

where  $a(\cdot, \cdot)$  and  $l(\cdot)$  are defined in Definition 8.14 by adding  $h$  as subindex for  $u$  and  $\phi$ .

**Remark 8.24** (Galerkin method). The process going from  $V$  to  $V_h$  using the variational formulation is called **Galerkin method**. Here, it is not necessary that the bilinear form is symmetric. As further information: not only is Galerkin’s method a numerical procedure, but it is also used in analysis when establishing existence of the continuous problem. Here, one starts with a finite dimensional subspace and constructs a sequence of finite dimensional subspaces  $V_h \subset V$  (namely passing with  $h \rightarrow 0$ ; that is to say: we add more and more basis functions such that  $\dim(V_h) \rightarrow \infty$ ). The idea of numerics is the same: finally we are interested in small  $h$  such that we obtain a discrete solution with sufficient accuracy.

**Remark 8.25** (Ritz method). If we discretize the minimization problem  $(M)$ , the above process is called **Ritz method**. In particular, the bilinear form of the variational problem is symmetric.

**Remark 8.26** (Ritz-Galerkin method). For general bilinear forms (i.e., not necessarily symmetric) the discretization procedure is called **Ritz-Galerkin method**.

**Remark 8.27** (Petrov-Galerkin method). In a **Petrov-Galerkin method** the trial and test spaces can be different.

In order to proceed we can express  $u_h \in V_h$  with the help of the basis functions  $\phi_j$  in  $V_h := \{\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n\}$ , thus:

$$u_h = \sum_{j=1}^n u_j \phi_j(x), \quad u_j \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Since (77) holds for all  $\phi_i \in V_h$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , it holds in particular for each  $i$ :

$$(u'_h, \phi'_i) = (f, \phi_i) \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq n. \quad (79)$$

We now insert the representation for  $u_h$  in (79), yielding the **Galerkin equations**:

$$\sum_{j=1}^n u_j (\phi'_j, \phi'_i) = (f, \phi_i) \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq n. \quad (80)$$

We have now extracted the coefficient vector of  $u_h$  and only the **shape functions**  $\phi_j$  and  $\phi_i$  (i.e., their derivatives of course) remain in the integral.

This yields a linear equation system of the form

$$AU = B$$

where

$$U = (u_j)_{1 \leq j \leq n} \in \mathbb{R}^n, \quad (81)$$

$$B = ((f, \phi_i))_{1 \leq i \leq n} \in \mathbb{R}^n, \quad (82)$$

$$A = ((\phi'_j, \phi'_i))_{1 \leq j, i \leq n} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}. \quad (83)$$

Thus the final solution vector is  $U$  which contains the values  $u_j$  at the nodal points  $x_j$  of the mesh. Here we remark that  $x_0$  and  $x_{n+1}$  are not solved in the above system and are determined by the boundary conditions  $u(x_0) = u(0) = 0$  and  $u(x_{n+1}) = u(1) = 0$ .

### 8.5.5 Evaluation of the integrals

It remains to determine the specific entries of the system matrix (also called stiffness matrix)  $A$  and the right hand side vector  $B$ . Since the basis functions have only little support on two neighboring elements (in fact that is one of the key features of the FEM) the resulting matrix  $A$  is sparse, i.e., it contains only a few number of entries that are not equal to zero.

Let us now evaluate the integrals that form the entries  $a_{ij}$  of the matrix  $A = (a_{ij})_{1 \leq i, j \leq n}$ . For the diagonal elements we calculate:

$$a_{ii} = \int_{\Omega} \varphi'_i(x) \varphi'_i(x) dx = \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_{i+1}} \varphi'_i(x) \varphi'_i(x) dx \quad (84)$$

$$= \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} \frac{1}{h^2} dx + \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} \left(-\frac{1}{h}\right)^2 dx \quad (85)$$

$$= \frac{h}{h^2} + \frac{h}{h^2} \quad (86)$$

$$= \frac{2}{h}. \quad (87)$$

For the right off-diagonal we have:

$$a_{i,i+1} = \int_{\Omega} \varphi'_{i+1}(x) \varphi'_i(x) dx = \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} \frac{1}{h} \cdot \left(-\frac{1}{h}\right) dx = -\frac{1}{h}. \quad (88)$$

It is trivial to see that  $a_{i,i+1} = a_{i-1,i}$ .

In compact form we summarize:

$$a_{ij} = \int_{\Omega} \phi'_j(x) \phi'_i(x) dx = \begin{cases} -\frac{1}{x_{j+1}-x_j} & \text{if } j = i-1 \\ \frac{1}{x_j-x_{j-1}} + \frac{1}{x_{j+1}-x_j} & \text{if } j = i \\ -\frac{1}{x_j-x_{j-1}} & \text{if } j = i+1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}. \quad (89)$$

For a uniform mesh (as we assume in this section) we can simplify the previous calculation since we know that  $h = h_j = x_{j+1} - x_j$ :

$$a_{ij} = \int_{\Omega} \phi'_j(x) \phi'_i(x) dx = \begin{cases} -\frac{1}{h} & \text{if } j = i-1 \\ \frac{2}{h} & \text{if } j = i \\ -\frac{1}{h} & \text{if } j = i+1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}. \quad (90)$$

The resulting matrix  $A$  for the ‘inner’ points  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  reads then:

$$A = h^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & -1 & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & -1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & & & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}.$$

**Remark 8.28.** Since the boundary values at  $x_0 = 0$  and  $x_{n+1} = 1$  are known to be  $u(0) = u(1) = 0$ , they are not assembled in the matrix  $A$ . We could have considered all support points  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, x_{n+1}$  we would have obtained:

$$A = h^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & -1 & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & -1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & & & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{(n+2) \times (n+2)}.$$

Here the entries  $a_{00} = a_{n+1,n+1} = 1$  (and not 2) because at the boundary only the half of the two corresponding test functions do exist. Furthermore, working with this matrix  $A$  in the solution process below, we have to modify the entries  $a_{0,1} = a_{1,0} = a_{n,n+1} = a_{n+1,n}$  from the value  $-1$  to 0 such that  $u_{h,0} = u_{h,n+1} = 0$  can follow.

It remains to evaluate the integrals of the right hand side vector  $b$ . Here the main difficulty is that the given right hand side  $f$  may be complicated. Of course it always holds for the entries of  $b$ :

$$b_i = \int_{\Omega} f(x) \phi_i(x) dx \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq n.$$

The right hand side now depends explicitly on the values for  $f$ . Let us assume a constant  $f = 1$  (thus the original problem would be  $-u'' = 1$ ), then:

$$b_i = \int_{\Omega} 1 \cdot \phi_i(x) dx = 1 \cdot \int_{\Omega} \phi_i(x) dx = 1 \cdot h \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq n.$$

Namely

$$B = (h, \dots, h)^T.$$

For non-uniform step sizes we obtain:

$$\frac{1}{h_i} \int_{K_i} \phi_i(x) dx, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1}{h_{i+1}} \int_{K_{i+1}} \phi_i(x) dx$$

with  $h_i = x_i - x_{i-1}$ ,  $h_{i+1} = x_{i+1} - x_i$  and  $K_i = [x_{i-1}, x_i]$  and  $K_{i+1} = [x_i, x_{i+1}]$ .

**Exercise 7.** Derive the system matrix  $A$  by assuming non-uniform step sizes  $h_j = x_j - x_{j+1}$ .

**Exercise 8.** Derive the system matrix  $A$  for a  $P_2$  discretization, namely working with quadratic basis functions. Sketch how the basis functions look like.

### 8.5.6 Definition of a finite element

We briefly summarize the key ingredients that define a **finite element**. A finite element is a triple  $(K, P_K, \Sigma)$  where

- $K$  is an element, i.e., a geometric object (in 1D an interval);
- $P_k(K)$  is a finite dimensional linear space of polynomials defined on  $K$ ;
- $\Sigma$ , not introduced so far, is a set of degrees of freedom (DoF), e.g., the values of the polynomial at the vertices of  $K$ .

These three ingredients yield a uniquely determined polynomial on an element  $K$ .

### 8.5.7 Properties of the system matrix $A$

We first notice:

**Remark 8.29.** *The system matrix  $A$  has a factor  $\frac{1}{h}$  whereas in the corresponding matrix  $A$ , using a finite difference scheme, we have a factor  $\frac{1}{h^2}$ . The reason is that we integrate the weak form using finite elements and one  $h$  is hidden in the right hand side vector  $b$ . Division by  $h$  we yield the same system for finite elements as for finite differences.*

Next, we show that  $A$  is symmetric and positive definite. It holds

$$(\phi'_i, \phi'_j) = (\phi'_j, \phi'_i).$$

Using the representation

$$u(x) = \sum_{j=1}^n u_{j,h} \phi_{j,h}(x),$$

we obtain

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n u_i (\phi'_i, \phi'_j) u_j = \left( \sum_{i,j=1}^n u_i \phi'_i, \sum_{i,j=1}^n u_j \phi'_j \right) = (u', u') \geq 0.$$

We have

$$(u', u') = 0$$

only if  $u' \equiv 0$  since  $u(0) = 0$  only for  $u \equiv 0$  or  $u_{j,h} = 0$  for  $j = 1, \dots, n$ . We recall that a symmetric matrix  $B \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  is said to be positive definite if

$$\xi \cdot B \xi = \sum_{i,j=1}^n \xi_i b_{ij} \xi_j > 0 \quad \forall \xi \in \mathbb{R}^n, \xi \neq 0.$$

Finally, it holds:

**Proposition 8.30.** *A symmetric positive matrix  $B$  is positive definite if and only if the eigenvalues of  $B$  are strictly positive. Furthermore, a positive definite matrix is regular and consequently, the linear system to which  $B$  is associated with has a unique solution.*

*Proof.* Results from linear algebra. □

### 8.5.8 Numerical test: 1D Poisson

**8.5.8.1 Implementation in octave** We design a numerical test implemented in octave [21].

**Formulation 8.31.** Let  $\Omega = (0, 1)$

$$\begin{cases} \text{Find } u \in \mathcal{C}^2(\Omega) \text{ such that} \\ -u''(x) = f \quad \text{in } \Omega \\ u(0) = 0, \\ u(1) = 0. \end{cases} \quad (91)$$

where  $f = -1$ . To discretize the problem, we work with linear finite elements. To this end, we introduce the function space  $V_h$  that consists of piece-wise linear polynomials and also contains the Dirichlet boundary conditions.

The variational form then reads:

$$\int_0^1 u'(x) \varphi'(x) dx = \int_0^1 f \varphi(x) dx.$$

The evaluation of these integrals has been performed in the previous sections of this chapter.

We now choose  $n = 4$ . Thus we have five support points

$$x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4$$

and  $h = 1/4 = 0.25$ .

With these settings we obtain for the matrix  $A$ :

$$\begin{matrix} 16 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 32 & -16 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -16 & 32 & -16 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -16 & 32 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 16 \end{matrix}$$

and for the right hand side vector  $b$ :

$$\begin{matrix} 0 \\ -1 \\ -1 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{matrix}$$

We use the famous backslash solution operator (in fact an LU decomposition):

$$U = A \backslash b$$

and obtain as solution  $U = (U_0, U_1, U_2, U_3, U_4)$ :

$$\begin{matrix} 0.00000 \\ -0.09375 \\ -0.12500 \\ -0.09375 \\ 0.00000 \end{matrix}$$

A plot of the discrete solution is provided in Figure 10.

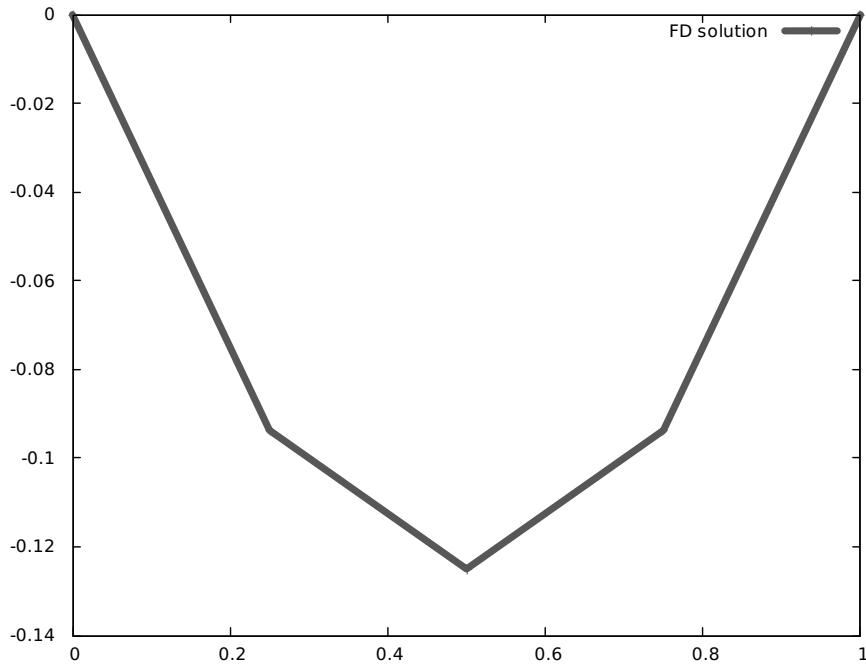


Figure 10: Solution of the 1D Poisson problem with  $f = -1$  using five support points with  $h = 0.25$ . We observe that the approximation is rather coarse. A smaller  $h$  would yield more support points and more solution values and therefore a more accurate solution.

**8.5.8.2 Implementation in python** The goal of the computation is to recover the exact solution with respect to the chosen parameters and domain specifications:

$$u(x) = -\frac{1}{2}(-x^2 + x) \quad \text{on } \Omega.$$

It is trivial to check that this exact solution satisfies the PDE and also the boundary conditions.

As numerical results we obtain the solution curve displayed in Figure 8.5.8.2. Visually we observe excellent agreement between the numerical and the exact solution.

To quantify this statement we could compute the error in certain norms. The most common for this setting are the  $L^2$  norm (measuring the solution itself) and the  $H^1$  norm (measuring the gradients of the solution):

$$\|u - u_h\|_{L^2} \rightarrow 0? \quad \text{for } h \rightarrow 0, \|u - u_h\|_{H^1} \rightarrow 0? \quad \text{for } h \rightarrow 0. \quad (92)$$

These findings are shown in the next subsection.

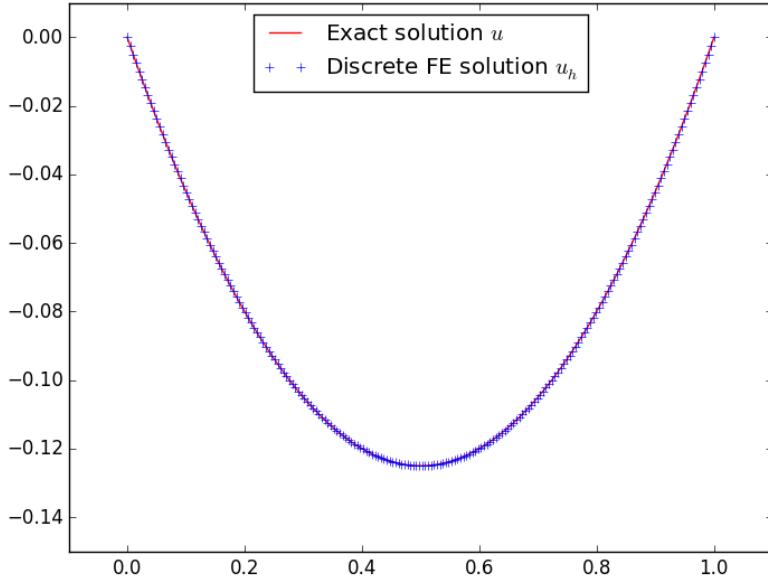


Figure 11: Visual comparison between the exact and the manufactured solution. Please do not forget: the ‘picture norm’ (thus comparing two graphs as we do here) is not a rigorous mathematical justification that a result is correct. It is rather a strong indication about the solution behavior and very helpful to get an idea about the correctness. The mathematical justification would be to compare the two solutions in a certain error measure (i.e., a norm) as we have done in Section 7.6.

**8.5.8.3 Implementation in deal.II (C++)** Thirdly, we adopt deal.II [4, 5] an open source C++ finite element code to carry out this computation. Even that in such packages many things are hidden and performed in the background, deal.II leaves enough room to see the important points:

- Creating a domain  $\Omega$  and decomposition of this domain into elements;
- Setting up the vectors  $u, b$  and the matrix  $A$  with their correct length;
- Assembling (not yet solving!) the system  $Au = b$ . We compute locally on each mesh element the matrix entries and right hand side entries on a master cell and insert the respective values at their global places in the matrix  $A$ ;
- In the assembly, the integrals are evaluated using numerical quadrature in order to allow for more general expressions when for instance the material parameter  $a$  is not constant to 1 or when higher-order polynomials need to be evaluated;
- Solution of the linear system  $Au = b$  (the implementation of the specific method is hidden though);
- Postprocessing of the solution: here writing the solution data  $U_j, 1 \leq j \leq n$  into a file that can be read from a graphic visualization program such as gnuplot, paraview, visit.

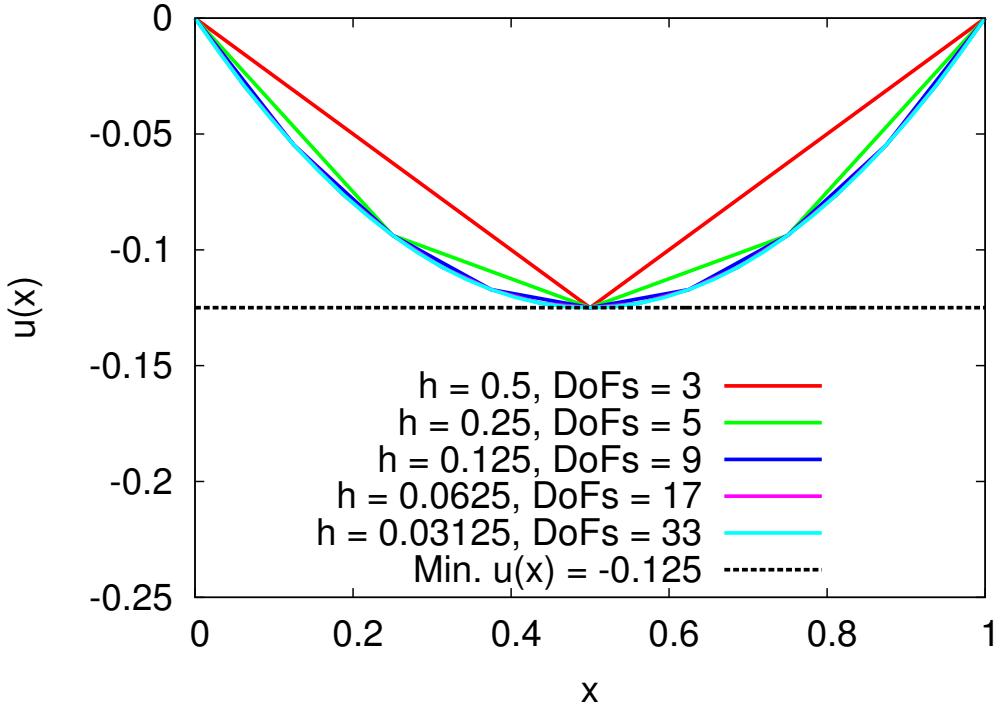


Figure 12: Solution of the 1D Poisson problem with  $f = -1$  using finite elements with various mesh sizes  $h$ . DoFs is the abbreviation for degrees of freedom; here the number of support points  $x_j$ . The dimension of the discrete space is  $DoFs$ . For instance for  $h = 0.5$ , we have 3 DoFs and two basis functions, thus  $\dim(V_h) = 3$ . The numerical solutions are computed with an adaptation of step-3 in deal.II [4, 5]. Please notice that the picture norm is not a proof in the strict mathematical sense: to show that the purple, and blue lines come closer and closer must be confirmed by error estimates as presented for instance in [37] accompanied by numerical simulations in Section 8.9. Of course, for this 1D Poisson problem, we easily observe a limit case, but for more complicated equations it is often not visible whether the solutions do converge.

Level	Elements	DoFs
<hr/>		
1	2	3
2	4	5
3	8	9
4	16	17
5	32	33
<hr/>		

## 8.6 Algorithmic details

We provide some algorithmic details for implementing finite elements in a computer code. Of course, for constant coefficients, a ‘nice’ domain  $\Omega$  with uniform step lengths, we can immediately build the matrix, right hand side vector and compute the solution. In practice, we are interested in more general formulations. Again, we explain all details in 1D, and partially follow Suttmeier’s lecture [33]. Further remarks and details (in particular for higher dimensions) can be found in the literature provided in Section 1.

### 8.6.1 Assembling integrals on each cell $K$

In practice, one does not proceed as in Section 8.5.5 since this only makes sense for very simple problems.

A more general procedure is based on an element-wise consideration, which is motivated by:

$$a(u, \phi) = \int_{\Omega} u' \phi' dx = \sum_{K \in \mathcal{T}_h} \int_K u' \phi' dx.$$

The basic procedure is:

**Algorithm 8.32** (Basic assembling - robust, but partly inefficient). *Let  $K_s, s = 0, \dots, n$  be an element and let  $i$  and  $j$  be the indices of the degrees of freedom (namely the basis functions). The basic algorithm to compute all entries of the system matrix and right hand side vector is:*

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{for all elements } K_s \text{ with } s = 0, \dots, n \\ & \quad \text{for all DoFs } i \text{ with } i = 0, \dots, n+1 \\ & \quad \quad \text{for all DoFs } j \text{ with } j = 0, \dots, n+1 \\ & \quad \quad a_{ij}+ = \int_{K_s} \phi'_i(x) \phi'_j(x) dx \end{aligned}$$

Here  $+$  means that entries with the same indices  $i, j$  are summed. For the right hand side, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{for all elements } K_s \text{ with } s = 0, \dots, n \\ & \quad \text{for all DoFs } i \text{ with } i = 0, \dots, n+1 \\ & \quad b_i+ = \int_{K_s} f(x) \phi_i(x) dx. \end{aligned}$$

Again  $+$  means that only the  $b_i$  with the same  $i$  are summed.

**Remark 8.33.** This algorithm is a bit inefficient since a lot of zeros are added. Knowing in advance the polynomial degree of the shape functions allows to add an if-condition to assemble only non-zero entries.

### 8.6.2 Example in $\mathbb{R}^5$

We illustrate the previous algorithm for a concrete example. Let us compute 1D Poisson on four support points  $x_i, i = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4$  that are equidistantly distributed yielding a uniform mesh size  $h = x_j - x_{j-1}$ . The discrete space  $V_h$  is given by:

$$V_h = \{\phi_0, \phi_1, \phi_2, \phi_3, \phi_4\}, \quad \dim(V_h) = 5.$$

The number of cells is  $\#K = 4$ .

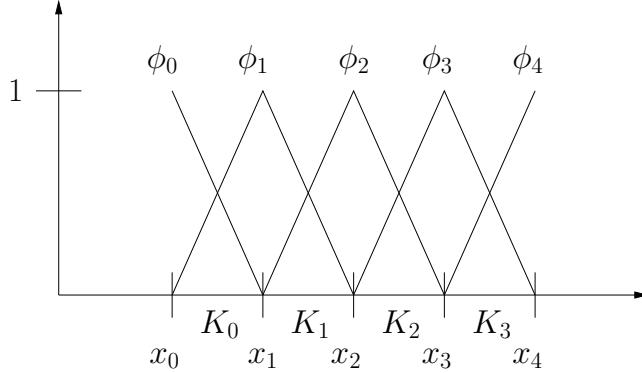


Figure 13: Basis functions  $\phi_i$ , elements  $K_s$  and nodes  $x_s$  used in Section 8.6.2.

It holds furthermore:

$$U \in \mathbb{R}^5, \quad A \in \mathbb{R}^{5 \times 5}, \quad b \in \mathbb{R}^5.$$

We start with  $s = 0$ , namely  $K_0$ :

$$\begin{aligned} a_{00}^{s=0} &= a_{00} = \int_{K_0} \phi'_0 \phi'_0 = \frac{1}{h}, & a_{01}^{s=0} &= a_{01} = \int_{K_0} \phi'_0 \phi'_1 = -\frac{1}{h}, \\ a_{02}^{s=0} &= a_{02} = \int_{K_0} \phi'_0 \phi'_2 = 0, & a_{03}^{s=0} &= a_{03} = \int_{K_0} \phi'_0 \phi'_3 = 0, & a_{04}^{s=0} &= a_{04} = \int_{K_0} \phi'_0 \phi'_4 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

- Similarly, we evaluate  $a_{1j}, a_{2j}, a_{3j}, a_{4j}, j = 0, \dots, 4$ .
- Next, we increment  $s = 1$  and work on cell  $K_1$ . Here we again evaluate all  $a_{ij}$  and sum them to the previously obtained values on  $K_0$ . Therefore the  $+$  in the above algorithm.
- We also see that we add a lot of zeros when  $|i-j| > 1$ . For this reason, a good algorithm first designs the sparsity pattern and determines the entries of  $A$  that are non-zero. This is clear due to the construction of the hat functions and that they only overlap on neighboring elements.

After having assembled the values on all four elements  $K_s, s = 1, 2, 3, 4$ , we obtain the following system matrix:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} \sum_s a_{00}^s & \sum_s a_{01}^s & \sum_s a_{02}^s & \sum_s a_{03}^s & \sum_s a_{04}^s \\ \sum_s a_{10}^s & \sum_s a_{11}^s & \sum_s a_{12}^s & \sum_s a_{13}^s & \sum_s a_{14}^s \\ \sum_s a_{20}^s & \sum_s a_{21}^s & \sum_s a_{22}^s & \sum_s a_{23}^s & \sum_s a_{24}^s \\ \sum_s a_{30}^s & \sum_s a_{31}^s & \sum_s a_{32}^s & \sum_s a_{33}^s & \sum_s a_{34}^s \\ \sum_s a_{40}^s & \sum_s a_{41}^s & \sum_s a_{42}^s & \sum_s a_{43}^s & \sum_s a_{44}^s \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{h} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

To fix the homogeneous Dirichlet conditions, we can manipulate directly the matrix  $A$  or work with a ‘constraint matrix’. We eliminate the entries of the rows and columns of the off-diagonals corresponding to the boundary indices; here  $i = 0$  and  $i = 4$ . Then:

$$A = \frac{1}{h} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

### 8.6.3 Numerical quadrature

As previously stated, the arising integrals may easily become difficult such that a direct integration is not possible anymore:

- Non-constant right hand sides  $f(x)$  and non-constant coefficients  $\alpha(x)$ ;
- Higher-order shape functions;
- Non-uniform step sizes, more general domains.

In modern FEM programs, Algorithm 8.32 is complemented by an alternative evaluation of the integrals using numerical quadrature. The general formula reads:

$$\int_{\Omega} g(x) \approx \sum_{l=0}^{n_q} \omega_l g(q_l)$$

with quadrature weights  $\omega_l$  and quadrature points  $q_l$ . The number of quadrature points is  $n_q + 1$ .

**Remark 8.34.** *The support points  $x_i$  and  $q_l$  do not need to be necessarily the same. For Gauss quadrature, they are indeed different. For lowest-order interpolatory quadrature rules (box, Trapez) they correspond though.*

#### 8.6.3.1 Lowest-order quadrature rules

A numerical quadrature rule is defined as<sup>4</sup>:

**Definition 8.35** (Quadrature rule). *Let  $f \in C[a, b]$ . A numerical quadrature formula to approximate the integral  $I(f) := \int_a^b f(x) dx$  is given by*

$$I^n(f) := \sum_{i=0}^n \alpha_i f(x_i)$$

with  $n + 1$  support points  $x_0, \dots, x_n$  and  $n + 1$  quadrature weights  $\alpha_0, \dots, \alpha_n$ .

The simplest quadrature rules are:

**Definition 8.36** (Box rule). *The box rule is the simplest quadrature rule. In the interval  $[a, b]$  the function  $f(x)$  is simply approximated with a constant polynomial  $p(x) = f(a)$ , i.e.,*

$$I^0(f) = (b - a)f(a),$$

*This is the left-sided box rule. A corresponding version by taking the right boundary point is*

$$I^0(f) = (b - a)f(b).$$

**Definition 8.37** (Midpoint rule). *The function is interpolated in the middle of the interval with a constant polynomial:*

$$I^0(f) = (b - a)f\left(\frac{a + b}{2}\right).$$

**Definition 8.38** (Trapezoidal rule). *The trapezoidal rule is obtained by integrating a linear polynomial through  $(a, f(a))$  and  $(b, f(b))$  in order to approximate the function  $f(x)$ :*

$$I^1(f) = \frac{b - a}{2}(f(a) + f(b)).$$

**Remark 8.39.** *For more details on quadrature rules we refer to further literature such as for example [29]. Specifically, quadrature rules of optimal order are based on Gauss quadrature in which not only the number of support points are important, but also their (optimal) location. In state-of-the-art finite element software packages, Gauss quadrature is used to evaluate integrals.*

---

<sup>4</sup>The definitions and notation of the quadrature rules are copied and translated from [29].

**Remark 8.40.** Concerning the order of the quadrature rule (namely up to which order polynomials are integrated in an exact way), numerical quadrature rules show similarities to finite differences schemes. For instance, the trapezoidal rules in FD and numerical quadrature have the same name and the same order. The box rules on the other hand correspond to backward and forward difference quotients yielding the backward and forward Euler schemes.

**Remark 8.41.** It is important though that the quadrature rules are in accordance with the polynomials degree of the finite element scheme. If the quadrature rules do not have sufficient order, the convergence is influenced up to non-solvability of the linear equation system.

**Exercise 9.** Evaluate

$$\int_{-3}^3 (1 - x^2)^2 dx$$

using numerical quadrature (box-rule or trapezoidal rule) Which order is necessary to integrate in an exact way?

**Exercise 10.** Evaluate the entries of the stiffness matrix  $A$  using the trapezoidal rule (be careful, the task is nearly trivial).

**Exercise 11.** Let  $\Omega = (0, 1)$ . Implement a finite element scheme for solving

$$-\nabla \cdot (\nabla u) = 1 \quad \text{in } \Omega, \tag{93}$$

$$u = 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega \tag{94}$$

in octave or C++ or python. Then, change the boundary conditions to

$$u = 1 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega$$

Check your numerical solution by constructing an analytical solution (satisfying the PDE and the boundary conditions) and evaluate

$$|u_h(x_0) - u(x_0)|,$$

where  $x_0 = 0.4$  and  $u_h$  indicates the numerical FE solution and  $u$  the analytical solution.

**Exercise 12.** Implement a finite element scheme for solving the PDE:

$$\begin{aligned} -\varepsilon u''(x) + u'(x) &= 1, & \text{in } \Omega = (0, 1), \\ u(0) &= u(1) = 0, \end{aligned}$$

where  $\varepsilon$  is a small but positive parameter, e.g., take  $\varepsilon = 1, 10^{-2}, 10^{-4}$ . What do you observe in the numerical results with respect to  $\varepsilon$ ?

**Exercise 13.** Let  $\Omega = (0, 1)^2$ . Implement a finite element scheme for solving

$$-\nabla \cdot (\nabla u) = 1 \quad \text{in } \Omega, \tag{95}$$

$$u = 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega \tag{96}$$

in octave or C++ or python.

**8.6.3.2 Trapezoidal rule applied to the Poisson problem** We continue the above example by choosing the trapezoidal rule, which in addition, should integrate the arising integrals for the Poisson problem exactly:

$$\int_{K_s} g(x) \approx h_s \sum_{l=0}^{n_q} \omega_l g(q_l)$$

where  $h_s$  is the length of interval/element  $K_s$ ,  $n_q = 1$  and  $\omega_l = 0.5$ . This brings us to:

$$\int_{K_s} g(x) \approx h_s \frac{g(q_0) + g(q_1)}{2}.$$

Applied to our matrix entries, we have on an element  $K_s$ :

$$a_{ii} = \int_{K_s} \phi'_i(x) \phi'_i(x) dx \approx \frac{h_s}{2} (\phi'_i(q_0) \phi'_i(q_0) + \phi'_i(q_1) \phi'_i(q_1)).$$

For the right hand side, we for the case  $f = 1$  we can use for instance the mid-point rule:

$$\frac{1}{h_i} \int_{K_i} \phi_i(x) dx \approx \frac{1}{h_i} h_i \phi_i \left( \frac{x_i + x_{i-1}}{2} \right) = \phi_i \left( \frac{x_i + x_{i-1}}{2} \right).$$

**Remark 8.42.** If  $f = f(x)$  with an dependency on  $x$ , we should use a quadrature formula that integrates the function  $f(x)\phi_i(x)$  as accurate as possible.

**Remark 8.43.** It is important to notice that the order of the quadrature formula must be sufficiently high since otherwise the quadrature error dominates the convergence behavior of the FEM scheme.

#### 8.6.3.3 FE loops

We have now all ingredients to extend Algorithm 8.32:

**Algorithm 8.44** (Assembling using the trapezoidal rule). Let  $K_s, s = 0, \dots, n$  be an element and let  $i$  and  $j$  be the indices of the degrees of freedom (namely the basis functions). The basic algorithm to compute all entries of the system matrix  $A$  and right hand side vector  $b$  is:

```

for all elements  $K_s$  with  $s = 0, \dots, n$ 
    for all DoFs  $i$  with  $i = 0, \dots, n + 1$ 
        for all DoFs  $j$  with  $j = 0, \dots, n + 1$ 
            for all quad points  $l$  with  $l = 0, \dots, n_q$ 
                 $a_{ij} += \frac{h_s}{2} \phi'_i(q_l) \phi'_j(q_l)$ 

```

where  $n_q = 1$ . Here  $+=$  means that entries with the same indices are summed. This is necessary because on all cells  $K_s$  we assemble again  $a_{ij}$ .

```

for all elements  $K_s$  with  $s = 0, \dots, n$ 
    for all DoFs  $i$  with  $i = 0, \dots, n + 1$ 
        for all quad points  $l$  with  $l = 0, \dots, n_q$ 
             $b_i += \frac{h_s}{2} f(q_l) \phi_i(q_l)$ 

```

**Remark 8.45.** In practice it is relatively easy to reduce the computational cost when a lot of zeros are computed. We know due to the choice of the finite element, which DoFs are active on a specific element and can assemble only these shape functions. For linear elements, we could easily add an if condition that only these  $a_{ij}$  are assembled when  $|i - j| \leq 1$ . We finally remark that these loops will definitely work, but there is a second aspect that needs to be considered in practice which is explained in Section 8.6.4.

#### 8.6.4 Details on the evaluation on the master element

In practice, all integrals are transformed onto a **master element** (or so-called **reference element**) and evaluated there. This has the advantage that

- we only need to evaluate once all basis functions;
- numerical integration formulae are only required on the master element;
- independence of the coordinate system. For instance quadrilateral elements in 2D change their form when the coordinate system is rotated [28].

The price to pay is to compute at each step a deformation gradient and a determinant, which is however easier than evaluating all the integrals.

We consider the (physical) element  $K_i^{(h_i)} = [x_i, x_{i+1}], i = 0, \dots, n$  and the variable  $x \in K_i^{(h_i)}$  with  $h_i = x_{i+1} - x_i$ . Without loss of generality, we work in the following with the first element  $K_0^{(h_0)} = [x_0, x_1]$  and  $h = h_0 = x_1 - x_0$  as shown in Figure 14. The generalization to  $s$  elements is briefly discussed in Section 8.6.5.



Figure 14: The mesh element  $K_0^{(h_0)}$ .

The element  $K_i^{(h_i)}$  is transformed to the master element (i.e., the unit interval with mesh size  $h = 1$ )  $K^{(1)} := [0, 1]$  with the local variable  $\xi \in [0, 1]$  as shown in Figure 15.



Figure 15: The master element  $K^{(1)}$ .

For the transformations, we work with the substitution rule (see Section 3.13). Here in 1D, and in higher dimensions with the analogon. We define the mapping

$$\begin{aligned} T_h : K^{(1)} &\rightarrow K_0^{(h_0)} \\ \xi &\mapsto T_h(\xi) = x = x_0 + \xi \cdot (x_1 - x_0) = x_0 + \xi h. \end{aligned}$$

While function values can be identified in both coordinate systems, i.e.,

$$f(x) = \hat{f}(\xi), \quad \hat{f} \text{ defined in } K^{(1)},$$

derivatives will be complemented by further terms due to the chain rule that we need to employ. Differentiation in the physical coordinates yields

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dx} : \quad 1 &= (x_1 - x_0) \frac{d\xi}{dx} \\ \Rightarrow \quad dx &= (x_1 - x_0) \cdot d\xi. \end{aligned}$$

The volume (here in 1D: length) change can be represented by the determinant of the Jacobian of the transformation:

$$J := x_1 - x_0 = h.$$

These transformations follow exactly the way as they are known in continuum mechanics. Thus for higher dimensions we refer exemplarily to [20], where transformations between different domains can be constructed.

We now construct the inverse mapping

$$T_h^{-1} : K_0^{(h_0)} \rightarrow K^{(1)}$$

$$x \mapsto T_h^{-1}(x) = \xi = \frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} = \frac{x - x_0}{h},$$

with the derivative

$$\partial_x T_h^{-1}(x) = \xi_x = \frac{d\xi}{dx} = \frac{1}{x_1 - x_0}.$$

A basis function  $\varphi_i^h$  on  $K_0^{(h_0)}$  reads:

$$\varphi_i^h(x) := \varphi_i^1(T_h^{-1}(x)) = \varphi_i^1(\xi)$$

and for the derivative we obtain with the chain rule:

$$\partial_x \varphi_i^h(x) = \partial_\xi \varphi_i^1(\xi) \cdot \partial_x T_h^{-1}(x) = \partial_\xi \varphi_i^1(\xi) \cdot \xi_x$$

with  $T_h^{-1}(x) = \xi$ .

**Example 8.46.** We provide two examples. Firstly:

$$\int_{K_h} f(x) \varphi_i^h(x) dx \stackrel{\text{Sub.}}{=} \int_{K^{(1)}} f(T_h(\xi)) \cdot \varphi_i^1(\xi) \cdot J \cdot d\xi, \quad (97)$$

and secondly,

$$\int_{K_h} \partial_x \varphi_i^h(x) \cdot \partial_x \varphi_j^h(x) dx = \int_{K^{(1)}} (\partial_\xi \varphi_i^1(\xi)) \cdot \xi_x \cdot (\partial_\xi \varphi_j^1(\xi)) \cdot \xi_x \cdot J d\xi. \quad (98)$$

We can now apply numerical integration using again the trapezoidal rule and obtain for the two previous integrals:

$$\int_{T_h} f(x) \varphi_i^h(x) dx \stackrel{(97)}{\approx} \sum_{k=1}^q \omega_k f(F_h(\xi_k)) \varphi_i^1(\xi_k) \cdot J$$

and for the second example:

$$\int_{T_h} \partial_x \varphi_j^h(x) \partial_x \varphi_i^h(x) dx \approx \sum_{k=1}^q \omega_k (\partial_\xi \varphi_j^1(\xi_k) \cdot \xi_x) \cdot (\partial_\xi \varphi_i^1(\xi_k) \cdot \xi_x) \cdot J.$$

**Remark 8.47.** These final evaluations can again be realized by using Algorithm 8.44, but are now performed on the unit cell  $K^{(1)}$ .

### 8.6.5 Generalization to $s$ elements

We briefly setup the notation to evaluate the integrals for  $s$  elements:

- Let  $n$  be the index of the end point  $x_n = b$  ( $b$  is the nodal point of the right boundary). Then,  $n - 1$  is the number of elements (intervals in 1d), and  $n + 1$  is the number of the nodal points (degrees of freedom - DoFs) and the number shape functions, respectively (see also Figure 13);
- $K_s^{(h_s)} = [x_s, x_{s+1}], s = 0, \dots, n - 1$ .
- $h_s = x_{s+1} - x_s$ ;
- $T_s : K^{(1)} \rightarrow K_s^{(h_s)} : \xi \mapsto T_s(\xi) = x_s + \xi(x_{s+1} - x_s) = x_s + \xi h_s$ ;
- $T_s^{-1} : K_s^{(h_s)} \rightarrow K^{(1)} : x \mapsto T_s^{-1}(x) = \frac{x - x_s}{h_s}$ ;
- $\nabla T_s^{-1}(x) = \partial_x T_s^{-1}(x) = \frac{1}{h_s}$  (in 1D);
- $\nabla T_s(\xi) = \partial_x T_s(\xi) = (x_s + \xi h_s)' = h_s$  (in 1D);
- $J_s := \det(\nabla T_s(\xi)) = (x_s + \xi h_s)' = h_s$  (in 1D).

### 8.6.6 Example: Section 8.6.2 continued using Sections 8.6.4 and 8.6.5

We continue Example 8.6.2 and build the system matrix  $A$  by using the master element. In the following, we evaluate the Laplacians in weak form:

$$\begin{aligned} a_{ij} &= \int_{K_s} \phi'_i(x) \cdot \phi'_j(x) dx = \int_{K^{(1)}} \phi'_i(\xi) \partial_x T_s^{-1}(x) \cdot \phi'_j(\xi) \partial_x T_s^{-1}(x) J_s d\xi \\ &= \int_{K^{(1)}} \phi'_i(\xi) \frac{1}{h_s} \cdot \phi'_j(\xi) \frac{1}{h_s} h_s d\xi \\ &= \int_{K^{(1)}} \phi'_i(\xi) \cdot \phi'_j(\xi) \frac{1}{h_s} d\xi. \end{aligned}$$

We now compute **once!** the required integrals on the unit element (i.e., the master element)  $K^{(1)}$ . Here,  $\xi_0 = 0$  and  $\xi_1 = 1$  with  $h^{(1)} = \xi_1 - \xi_0 = 1$  resulting in two shape functions:

$$\phi_0(\xi) = \frac{\xi_1 - \xi}{h^{(1)}}, \quad \phi_1(\xi) = \frac{\xi - \xi_0}{h^{(1)}}.$$

The derivatives are given by:

$$\phi'_0(\xi) = \frac{-1}{h^{(1)}} = -1, \quad \phi'_1(\xi) = \frac{1}{h^{(1)}} = 1.$$

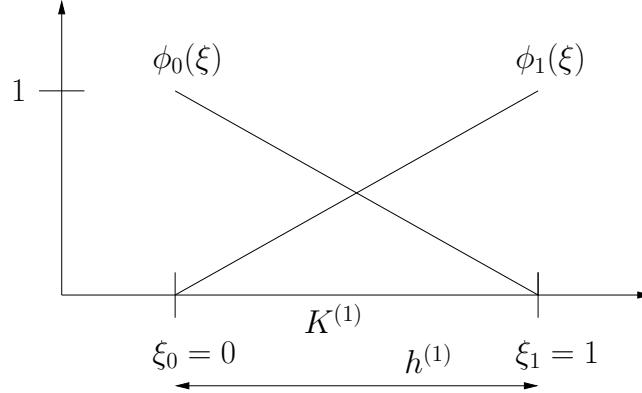


Figure 16: The master element  $K^{(1)}$  including nodal points and mesh size parameter  $h^{(1)}$ .

With these calculations, we compute all combinations on the master element required to evaluate the Laplacian in 1d:

$$\begin{aligned} a_{00}^{(1)} &= \int_{K^{(1)}} \phi'_0(\xi) \cdot \phi'_0(\xi) d\xi = \int_{K^{(1)}} (-1)^2 d\xi = 1, \\ a_{01}^{(1)} &= \int_{K^{(1)}} \phi'_0(\xi) \cdot \phi'_1(\xi) d\xi = \int_{K^{(1)}} (-1) \cdot 1 d\xi = -1, \\ a_{10}^{(1)} &= \int_{K^{(1)}} \phi'_1(\xi) \cdot \phi'_0(\xi) d\xi = \int_{K^{(1)}} 1 \cdot (-1) d\xi = -1, \\ a_{11}^{(1)} &= \int_{K^{(1)}} \phi'_1(\xi) \cdot \phi'_1(\xi) d\xi = \int_{K^{(1)}} 1 \cdot 1 d\xi = 1. \end{aligned}$$

It is clear what happens on each element  $K_s$  using Algorithm 8.32:

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_{00}^s &= \int_{K^{(1)}} \phi'_0(\xi) \cdot \phi'_0(\xi) \frac{1}{h_s} d\xi = \frac{1}{h_s} \int_{K^{(1)}} (-1)^2 d\xi = \frac{1}{h_s}, \\
 a_{01}^s &= \int_{K^{(1)}} \phi'_0(\xi) \cdot \phi'_1(\xi) \frac{1}{h_s} d\xi = \frac{1}{h_s} \int_{K^{(1)}} (-1) \cdot 1 d\xi = \frac{-1}{h_s}, \\
 a_{02}^s &= \int_{K^{(1)}} \phi'_0(\xi) \cdot \phi'_2(\xi) \frac{1}{h_s} d\xi = \frac{1}{h_s} \int_{K^{(1)}} (-1) \cdot 0 d\xi = 0, \\
 a_{03}^s &= \int_{K^{(1)}} \phi'_0(\xi) \cdot \phi'_3(\xi) \frac{1}{h_s} d\xi = \frac{1}{h_s} \int_{K^{(1)}} (-1) \cdot 0 d\xi = 0, \\
 a_{04}^s &= \int_{K^{(1)}} \phi'_0(\xi) \cdot \phi'_4(\xi) \frac{1}{h_s} d\xi = \frac{1}{h_s} \int_{K^{(1)}} (-1) \cdot 0 d\xi = 0.
 \end{aligned}$$

Next, we increase  $i \rightarrow i + 1$  resulting in  $i = 1$  and compute:

$$a_{10}^s, \quad a_{11}^s, \quad a_{12}^s, \quad a_{13}^s, \quad a_{14}^s.$$

We proceed until  $i = 4$ . This procedure is done for all elements  $K_s$  with  $s = 0, 1, 2, 3$ . As stated in Algorithm 8.32, the procedure is however inefficient since a lot of zeros are assembled. Knowing the structure of the matrix (i.e., the sparsity pattern) allows us upfront only to assemble the entries with non-zero entries.

Anyhow, the system matrix is composed by (the same as in Section 8.6.2):

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= \begin{pmatrix} \sum_s a_{00}^s & \sum_s a_{01}^s & \sum_s a_{02}^s & \sum_s a_{03}^s & \sum_s a_{04}^s \\ \sum_s a_{10}^s & \sum_s a_{11}^s & \sum_s a_{12}^s & \sum_s a_{13}^s & \sum_s a_{14}^s \\ \sum_s a_{20}^s & \sum_s a_{21}^s & \sum_s a_{22}^s & \sum_s a_{23}^s & \sum_s a_{24}^s \\ \sum_s a_{30}^s & \sum_s a_{31}^s & \sum_s a_{32}^s & \sum_s a_{33}^s & \sum_s a_{34}^s \\ \sum_s a_{40}^s & \sum_s a_{41}^s & \sum_s a_{42}^s & \sum_s a_{43}^s & \sum_s a_{44}^s \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{h_0} & \frac{-1}{h_0} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{-1}{h_0} & \frac{1}{h_0} + \frac{1}{h_1} & \frac{-1}{h_1} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{-1}{h_1} & \frac{1}{h_1} + \frac{1}{h_2} & \frac{-1}{h_2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{-1}{h_2} & \frac{1}{h_2} + \frac{1}{h_3} & \frac{-1}{h_3} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{-1}{h_3} & \frac{1}{h_3} \end{pmatrix}.
 \end{aligned}$$

This matrix is the same as if we had evaluated all shape functions on the physical elements with a possibly non-uniform step size  $h_s, s = 0, 1, 2, 3$ .

**Remark 8.48.** Good practical descriptions for higher dimensions can be found in [22]/Chapter 12] and [31].

## 8.7 Quadratic finite elements: $P_2$ elements

### 8.7.1 Algorithmic aspects

We explain the idea how to construct higher-order FEM in this section. Specifically, we concentrate on  $P_2$  elements, which are quadratic on each element  $K_s$ . First we define the discrete space:

$$V_h = \{v \in C[0, 1] \mid v|_{K_j} \in P_2\}$$

The space  $V_h$  is composed by the basis functions:

$$V_h = \{\phi_0, \dots, \phi_{n+1}, \phi_{\frac{1}{2}}, \dots, \phi_{n+\frac{1}{2}}\}.$$

The dimension of this space is  $\dim(V_h) = 2n + 1$ . Here, we followed the strategy that we use the elements  $K_s$  as in the linear case and add the mid-points in order to construct unique parabolic functions on each  $K_s$ . The mid-points represent degrees of freedom as the two edge points. For instance on each  $K_j = [x_j, x_{j+1}]$  we have as well  $x_{j+\frac{1}{2}} = x_j + \frac{h}{2}$ , where  $h = x_{j+1} - x_j$ . From this construction it is clear (not proven though!) that quadratic FEM have a higher accuracy than linear FEM.

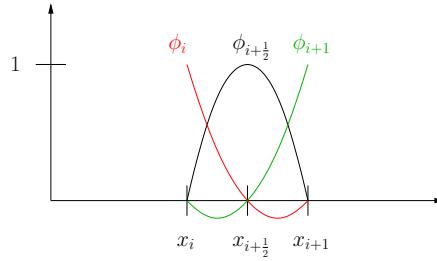


Figure 17: Quadratic basis functions

The specific construction of shape functions can be done as shown in 8.5.3 or using directly Lagrange basis polynomials (see lectures on introduction of numerical methods).

**Definition 8.49** ( $P_2$  shape functions). *On the master element  $K^{(1)}$ , we have*

$$\begin{aligned}\phi_0(\xi) &= 1 - 3\xi + 2\xi^2, \\ \phi_{\frac{1}{2}}(\xi) &= 4\xi - 4\xi^2, \\ \phi_1(\xi) &= -\xi + 2\xi^2.\end{aligned}$$

*These basis functions fulfill the property:*

$$\phi_i(\xi_j) = \begin{cases} 1 & i = j \\ 0 & i \neq j \end{cases}$$

*for  $i, j = 0, \frac{1}{2}, 1$ . On the master element, a function has therefore the prepresentation:*

$$u(\xi) = \sum_{j=0}^1 u_j \phi_j(\xi) + u_{\frac{1}{2}} \phi_{\frac{1}{2}}(\xi).$$

This definition allows us to construct a global function from  $V_h$ :

**Proposition 8.50.** *The space  $V_h$  is a subspace of  $V$ . Each function from  $V_h$  has a unique representation and is defined by its nodal points:*

$$u_h(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{n+1} u_j \phi_j(x) + \sum_{j=0}^n u_{j+\frac{1}{2}} \phi_{\frac{1}{2}}(x).$$

**Remark 8.51.** *The assembling of  $A, u$  and  $b$  is done in a similar fashion as shown in detail for linear finite elements.*

### 8.7.2 Numerical test: 1D Poisson using quadratic FEM

We continue Section 8.5.8.

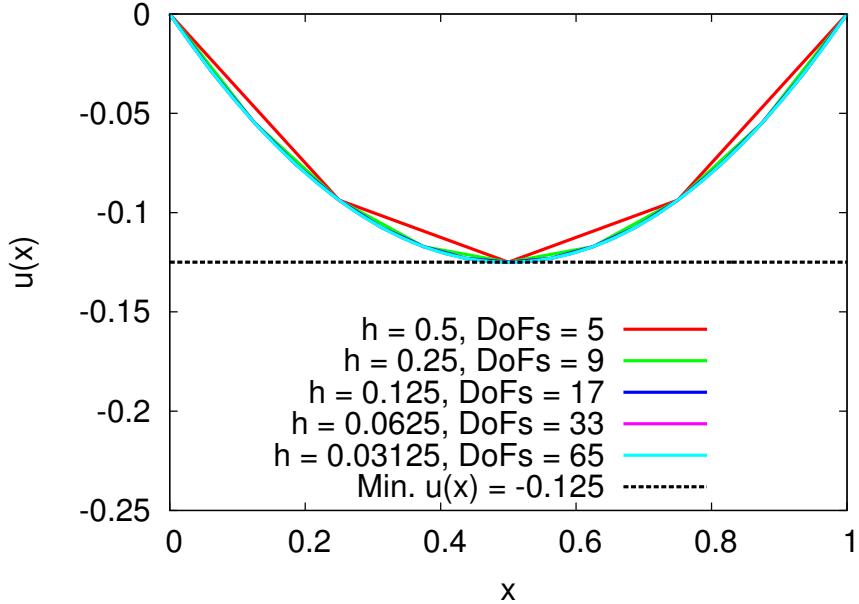


Figure 18: Solution of the 1D Poisson problem with  $f = -1$  using quadratic finite elements with various mesh sizes  $h$ . DoFs is the abbreviation for degrees of freedom; here the number of support points  $x_j$ . The dimension of the discrete space is  $\text{DoFs}$ . For instance for  $h = 0.5$ , we have 2 mesh elements, we have 5 DoFs and three basis functions, thus  $\dim(V_h) = 5$ . The numerical solutions are computed with an adaptation of step-3 in deal.II [4, 5]. Please notice that the picture norm is not a proof in the strict mathematical sense: to show that the purple, and blue lines come closer and closer must be confirmed by error estimates as presented for instance in [37] accompanied by numerical simulations in Section 8.9. Of course, for this 1D Poisson problem, we easily observe a limit case, but for more complicated equations it is often not visible whether the solutions do converge.

**Remark 8.52.** Be careful when plotting the solution using higher-order FEM. Sometimes, the output data is only written into the nodal values values defining the physical elements. In this case, a quadratic function is visually the same as a linear function. Plotting in all degrees of freedom would on the other hand shows also visually that higher-order FEM are employed.

Level	Elements	DoFs
=====		
1	2	5
2	4	9
3	8	17
4	16	33
5	32	65
=====		

### 8.7.3 Influence of numerical quadrature

We discuss one simple example for a situation where the system matrix will be singular. Since  $r' \geq m$  we have convergence of the procedure. Where  $r'$  means the degree of the quadrature rule and  $m$  is the degree of the FEM polynomials.

We assume the one-dimensional Poisson problem, take quadratic finite elements and use the middle-point rule as integration formula. So we solve

$$-u'' = f, \quad u(0) = (1) = 0$$

and take quadratic basic functions in the interval  $[0, 1]$  with equidistant step size  $h = x_i - x_{i-1}$ . There is an additional point required, so we take the middle point of the cells  $T_i$ ,

$$x_{i-1/2} := \frac{1}{2}(x_{i-1} - x_i)$$

The construction of the quadratic function  $v$  satisfies

$$v(x) = \sum_{i=0}^N v_i \psi_i(x) + \sum_{i=1}^N v_{i-1/2} \psi_{i-1/2}(x)$$

with the following properties

- i)  $\psi_i(x_k) = \delta_{ik}$ ,  $\psi_i(x_{k-1/2}) = 0$
- ii)  $\psi_{i-1/2}(x_k) = 0$ ,  $\psi_{i-1/2}(x_{k-1/2}) = \delta_{ik}$

Now, we get three quadratic basic functions

$$\psi_i(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{(x-x_{i-1})(x-x_{i-1/2})}{(x_i-x_{i-1})(x_i-x_{i-1/2})}, & x \in T_i \\ \frac{(x-x_{i+1})(x-x_{i+1/2})}{(x_i-x_{i+1})(x_i-x_{i+1/2})}, & x \in T_{i+1} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

and

$$\psi_{i-1/2}(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{(x-x_{i-1})(x-x_i)}{(x_{i-1/2}-x_i)(x_{i-1/2}-x_{i+1})}, & x \in T_i \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Next task is constructing the derivatives and give the variational formulation of the one-dimensional Laplace problem. Then solving integrals with middle-point rule,

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx (b-a) f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right) + \frac{1}{24} f''(\xi)(b-a)^3 \quad (99)$$

One know that the middle-point rule has degree 1. Using this quadrature formula for quadratic elements fails and the resulting systemmatrix  $A$  will have some zeros, so it is singular. For a local element we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_x \psi_{i-1}(x) &= \frac{2}{h_i^2} (2x - x_{i-1/2} - x_i) \\ \partial_x \psi_{i-1/2}(x) &= \frac{2}{h_i^2} (x_i + x_{i-1} - 2x) \\ \partial_x \psi_i(x) &= \frac{2}{h_i^2} (2x - x_{i-1/2} - x_{i-1}) \end{aligned}$$

and the following integrals

$$\begin{aligned}
 A_{11} &= \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} (\partial_x \psi_{i-1})^2 dx \\
 A_{22} &= \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} (\partial_x \psi_{i-1/2})^2 dx \approx h_i (\partial_x \psi_{i-1/2}(x_{i-1/2}))^2 = 0 \\
 A_{33} &= \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} (\partial_x \psi_i)^2 dx \\
 A_{12} = A_{21} &= \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} \partial_x \psi_{i-1} \cdot \partial_x \psi_{i-1/2} dx \approx h_i [(\partial_x \psi_{i-1} \cdot \partial_x \psi_{i-1/2})(x_{i-1/2})] = 0 \\
 A_{13} = A_{31} &= \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} \partial_x \psi_{i-1} \cdot \partial_x \psi_i dx \\
 A_{23} = A_{32} &= \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} \partial_x \psi_{i-1/2} \cdot \partial_x \psi_i dx \approx h_i [(\partial_x \psi_{i-1/2} \cdot \partial_x \psi_i)(x_{i-1/2})] = 0
 \end{aligned}$$

At last we write the results in our matrix,

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & 0 & A_{13} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ A_{31} & 0 & A_{33} \end{pmatrix} \quad (100)$$

## 8.8 Solving the linear equation system

### 8.8.1 Overview

The previous choices of basis functions  $\phi_h \in V_h$  (or better the space  $V_h$  itself) have been constructed in such a way that some special properties for the matrix are obtained:

- In order to obtain an accurate representation of the solution  $u_h$  we need to work with a great number of basis functions  $\phi_h$ , i.e., the space  $V_h$  is large, i.e,  $\dim(V_h) = n$  is large!
- On the other hand  $A$  should be sparse in order to allow for a fast solution.
- The condition number of the matrix should be not too bad because a bad condition number results in a large number of iterations when using iterative solution methods for solving  $Au = b$ . The condition number  $\chi(A)$  of a matrix  $A$  is defined as

$$\chi(A) = \frac{\lambda_{\max}}{\lambda_{\min}},$$

where  $\lambda_{\max} = \max_j \lambda_j$  and  $\lambda_{\min} = \min_j \lambda_j$  are the maximal and minimal eigenvalues of the matrix  $A$ .

**Remark 8.53.** The wishes No. 2 and 3 are again fulfilled by using finite elements rather than other basis functions.

**Remark 8.54.** As other remarks before, the numerical solution of coupled, nonlinear, partial differential equations, which are **robust** and **efficient** is an active research topic.

For a moderate number of unknowns a so-called direct solver (LU decomposition, Cholesky) is a good choice to solve  $AU = B$ . Such methods are always available in most software packages such as Matlab, octave, python, etc:

```
U = sp.sparse.linalg.spsolve(A,B) // in octave
U = A\B // in octave / Matlab
```

For big systems, **iterative solvers** are the methods of choice because they require less memory and less computational cost than direct solvers. We provide a brief introduction in the following section.

### 8.8.2 Basic iterative solvers

A large class of schemes is based on so-called **fixed point** methods:

$$f(x) = x$$

We provide in the following a brief introduction that is based on [29]. First, we have

**Definition 8.55.** Let  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ ,  $b \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $C \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ . For an initial guess  $x^0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  we iterate for  $k = 1, 2, \dots$ :

$$x^k = x^{k-1} + C(b - Ax^{k-1}).$$

Please be careful that  $k$  does not denote the power, but the current iteration index. Furthermore, we introduce:

$$B := I - CA \quad \text{and} \quad c := Cb.$$

Then:

$$x^k = Bx^{k-1} + c.$$

Thanks to the construction of

$$g(x) = Bx + c = x + C(b - Ax)$$

it is trivial to see that in the limit  $k \rightarrow \infty$ , it holds

$$g(x) = x$$

with the solution

$$Ax = b$$

**Remark 8.56.** Thanks to Banach's fixed point theorem (see again [29]), we can investigate under which conditions the above scheme will converge. Recall our discussions about the stability of the schemes for solving ODEs in which we found that  $|B| < 1$  should hold. Please also recall the corresponding numerical tests of Section 13.2 (blow-up, zig-zag solution and converged solution). Here the situation is very similar and we must ensure that

$$\|g(x) - g(y)\| \leq \|B\| \|x - y\|.$$

A big problem (which is also true for the ODE cases) is that different norms may predict different results. For instance it may happen that

$$\|B\|_2 < 1 \quad \text{but} \quad \|B\|_\infty > 1.$$

For this reason, one often works with the spectral norm  $\text{spr}(B)$ . More details can be found for instance in [29].

We concentrate now on the algorithmic aspects. The two fundamental requirements for the matrix  $C$  (defined above) are:

- It should hold  $C \approx A^{-1}$  and therefore  $\|I - CA\| \ll 1$ ;
- It should be simple to construct  $C$ .

Of course, we easily see that these two requirements are conflicting statements. As always in numerics we need to find a trade-off that is satisfying for the developer and the computer.

**Definition 8.57** (Richardson iteration). *The simplest choice of  $C$  is the identity matrix, i.e.,*

$$C = I$$

Then, we obtain the Richardson iteration

$$x^k = x^{k-1} + \omega(b - Ax^{k-1})$$

with a relaxation parameter  $\omega > 0$ .

Further schemes require more work and we need to decompose the matrix  $A$  first:

$$A = L + D + U.$$

Here,  $L$  is a lower-triangular matrix,  $D$  a diagonal matrix, and  $U$  an upper-triangular matrix. In more detail:

$$A = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \dots & 0 \\ a_{21} & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots \\ a_{n1} & \dots & a_{n,n-1} & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{=:L} + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & \dots & 0 \\ & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \dots & a_{nn} \end{pmatrix}}_{=:D} + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ & & \ddots & a_{n-1,n} \\ 0 & \dots & & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{=:U}.$$

With this, we can now define two very important schemes:

**Definition 8.58** (Jacobi method). To solve  $Ax = b$  with  $A = L + D + R$  let  $x^0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  be an initial guess. We iterate for  $k = 1, 2, \dots$

$$x^k = x^{k-1} + D^{-1}(b - Ax^{k-1})$$

or in other words  $J := -D^{-1}(L + R)$ :

$$x^k = Jx^{k-1} + D^{-1}b.$$

**Definition 8.59** (Gauß-Seidel method). To solve  $Ax = b$  with  $A = L + D + R$  let  $x^0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  be an initial guess. We iterate for  $k = 1, 2, \dots$

$$x^k = x^{k-1} + (D + L)^{-1}(b - Ax^{k-1})$$

or in other words  $H := -(D + L)^{-1}R$ :

$$x^k = Hx^{k-1} + (D + L)^{-1}b.$$

To implement these two schemes, we provide the presentation in index-notation:

**Theorem 8.60** (Index-notation of the Jacobi- and Gauß-Seidel methods). One step of the Jacobi method and Gauß-Seidel method, respectively, can be carried out in  $n^2 + O(n)$  operations. For each step, in index-notation for each entry it holds:

$$x_i^k = \frac{1}{a_{ii}} \left( b_i - \sum_{j=1, j \neq i}^n a_{ij} x_j^{k-1} \right), \quad i = 1, \dots, n,$$

i.e., (for the Gauss-Seidel method):

$$x_i^k = \frac{1}{a_{ii}} \left( b_i - \sum_{j < i} a_{ij} x_j^k - \sum_{j > i} a_{ij} x_j^{k-1} \right), \quad i = 1, \dots, n.$$

An alternative class of methods is based on so-called **descent** or **gradient** methods, which further improve the previously introduced methods. So far, we have:

$$x^{k+1} = x^k + d^k, \quad k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

where  $d^k$  denotes the **direction** in which we go at each step. For instance:

$$d^k = D^{-1}(b - Ax^k), \quad d^k = (D + L)^{-1}(b - Ax^k)$$

for the Jacobi and Gauss-Seidel methods, respectively. To improve these kind of iterations, we have two possibilities:

- Introducing a relaxation (or so-called damping) parameter  $\omega^k > 0$  (possibly adapted at each step) such that

$$x^{k+1} = x^k + \omega^k d^k,$$

and/or to improve the search direction  $d^k$  such that we reduce the error as best as possible. We restrict our attention to positive definite matrices as they appear in the discretization of elliptic PDEs studied previously in this section. A key point is another view on the problem by regarding it as a minimization problem for which  $Ax = b$  is the first-order necessary condition and consequently the sought solution. Imagine for simplicity that we want to minimize  $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}ax^2 - bx$ . The first-order necessary condition is nothing else than the derivative  $f'(x) = ax - b$ . We find a possible minimum via  $f'(x) = 0$ , namely

$$ax - b = 0 \Rightarrow x = a^{-1}b, \quad \text{if } a \neq 0.$$

That is exactly the same how we would solve a linear matrix system  $Ax = b$ . By regarding it as a minimum problem we understand better the purpose of our derivations: How does minimizing a function  $f(x)$  work in terms of an iteration? Well, we try to minimize  $f$  at each step  $k$ :

$$f(x^0) > f(x^1) > \dots > f(x^k)$$

This means that the direction  $d^k$  (to determine  $x^{k+1} = x^k + \omega^k d^k$ ) should be a descent direction. This idea can be applied to solving linear equation systems. We first define the quadratic form

$$Q(y) = \frac{1}{2}(Ay, y)_2 - (b, y)_2,$$

where  $(\cdot, \cdot)$  is the Euclidian scalar product. Then, we can define

**Algorithm 8.61** (Descent method - basic idea). *Let  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  be positive definite and  $x^0, b \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . Then for  $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$*

- Compute  $d^k$ ;
- Determine  $\omega^k$  as minimum of  $\omega^k = \operatorname{argmin} Q(x^k + \omega^k d^k)$ ;
- Update  $x^{k+1} = x^k + \omega^k d^k$ .

For instance  $d^k$  can be determined via the Jacobi or Gauss-Seidel methods.

Another possibility is the gradient method in which we use the gradient to obtain search directions  $d^k$ . This brings us to the gradient method:

**Algorithm 8.62** (Gradient descent). *Let  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  positive definite and the right hand side  $b \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . Let the initial guess be  $x^0 \in \mathbb{R}$  and the initial search direction  $d^0 = b - Ax^0$ . Then  $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$*

- Compute the vector  $r^k = Ad^k$ ;
  - Compute the relaxation
- $$\omega^k = \frac{\|d_k\|_2^2}{(r^k, d^k)_2}$$
- Update the solution vector  $x^{k+1} = x^k + \omega^k d^k$ .
  - Update the search direction vector  $d^{k+1} = d^k - \omega^k r^k$ .

One can show that the gradient method converges to the solution of the linear equation system  $Ax = b$  (see for instance [29]).

**Exercise 14.** Implement the descent method, Jacobi and Gauss-Seidel approaches for solving

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad b = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}, \quad x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

As initial guess take  $x^0 = 0$  and compute for each method 10 steps.

**Remark 8.63.** Other important methods that we have not studied in these lecture notes are the conjugate gradient method (CG), preconditioned methods, Krylov subspace methods (such as CG, GMRES - generalized minimal residual method) and multigrid methods.

### 8.8.3 Conjugate gradients (a Krylov space method)

This section is copy and paste from [29][Section 7.8] and translation from German into English. Gradient descent may converge slowly in most cases because search directions are in general  $d^k \not\perp d^{k+2}$ .

**8.8.3.1 Formulation of the CG scheme** In order to enhance the performance of gradient descent, the conjugate gradient (CG) scheme was developed. Here, the search directions  $\{d^0, \dots, d^{k-1}\}$  are pairwise orthogonal. The measure of orthogonality is achieved by using the  $A$  scalar product:

$$(Ad^r, d^s) = 0 \quad \forall r \neq s$$

At step  $k$ , we seek the approximation  $x^k = x^0 + \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \alpha_i d^i$  as the minimum of all  $\alpha = (\alpha_0, \dots, \alpha_{k-1})$  with respect to  $Q(x^k)$ :

$$\min_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} Q \left( x^0 + \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \alpha_i d^i \right) = \min_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( Ax^0 + \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \alpha_i Ad^i, x^0 + \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \alpha_i d^i \right) - \left( b, x^0 + \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \alpha_i d^i \right) \right\}$$

The stationary point is given by

$$0 \stackrel{!}{=} \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha_j} Q(x^k) = \left( Ax^0 + \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \alpha_i Ad^i, d^j \right) - (b, d^j) = - (b - Ax^k, d^j), \quad j = 0, \dots, k-1.$$

Therefore, the new residual  $b - Ax^k$  is perpendicular to all search directions  $d^j$  for  $j = 0, \dots, k-1$ . The resulting linear equation system

$$(b - Ax^k, d^j) = 0 \quad \forall j = 0, \dots, k-1 \quad (101)$$

has the feature of Galerkin orthogonality, which we know as property of FEM schemes.

While constructing the CG method, new search directions should be linearly independent of the current  $d^j$ . Otherwise, the space would not become larger and consequently, the approximation cannot be improved.

**Definition 8.64** (Krylov space). We choose an initial approximation  $x^0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  with  $d^0 := b - Ax^0$  the Krylov space  $K_k(d^0, A)$  such that

$$K_k(d^0, A) := \text{span}\{d^0, Ad^0, \dots, A^{k-1}d^0\}.$$

Here,  $A^k$  means the  $k$ -th power of  $A$ .

It holds:

**Lemma 8.65.** Let  $A^k d^0 \in K_k$ . Then, the solution  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$  of  $Ax = b$  is an element of the  $k$ -th Krylov space  $K_k(d^0, A)$ .

*Proof.* Let  $K_k$  be given and  $x^k \in x_0 + K_k$  the best approximation, which fulfills the Galerkin equation (101). Let  $r^k := b - Ax^k$ . Since

$$r^k = b - Ax^k = \underbrace{b - Ax^0}_{=d^0} + A(\underbrace{x^0 - x^k}_{\in K_k}) \in d^0 + AK_k$$

it holds  $r^k \in K_{k+1}$ . Supposing that  $K_{k+1} \subset K_k$ , we obtain  $r^k \in K_k$ . The Galerkin equation yields  $r^k \perp K_k$ , from which we obtain  $r^k = 0$  and  $Ax^k = b$ .  $\square$

If the CG scheme aborts since it cannot find new search directions, the solution is found. Let us assume that the  $A$ -orthogonal search directions  $\{d^0, d^1, \dots, d^{k-1}\}$  have been found, then we can compute the next CG approximation using the basis representation  $x^k = x^0 + \sum \alpha_i d^i$  and employing the Galerkin equation:

$$\left( b - Ax^0 - \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \alpha_i Ad^i, d_j \right) = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad (b - Ax^0, d^j) = \alpha_j (Ad^j, d^j) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \alpha_j = \frac{(d^0, d^j)}{(Ad^j, d^j)}$$

The  $A$ -orthogonal basis  $\{d^0, \dots, d^{k-1}\}$  of the Krylov space  $K_k(d^0, A)$  can be computed with the Gram-Schmidt procedure. However, this procedure has a high computational cost; see e.g., [29]. A better procedure is a two-step recursion formula, which is efficient and stable:

**Lemma 8.66** (Two-step recursion formula). *Let  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  symmetric positive definite and  $x^0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $d^0 := b - Ax^0$ . Then, for  $k = 1, 2, \dots$ , the iteration*

$$r^k := b - Ax^k, \quad \beta_{k-1} := -\frac{(r^k, Ad^{k-1})}{(d^{k-1}, Ad^{k-1})}, \quad d^k := r^k - \beta_{k-1}d^{k-1}$$

*constructs an  $A$ -orthogonal basis with  $(Ad^r, d^s) = 0$  for  $r \neq s$ . Here  $x^k$  in step  $k$  defines the new Galerkin solution  $(b - Ax^k, d^j) = 0$  for  $j = 0, \dots, k-1$ .*

*Proof.* See [29].  $\square$

We collect now all ingredients to construct the CG scheme. Let  $x^0$  be an initial guess and  $d^0 := b - Ax^0$  the resulting defect. Suppose that  $K_k := \text{span}\{d^0, \dots, d^{k-1}\}$  and  $x^k \in x^0 + K_k$  and  $r^k = b - Ax^k$  have been computed. Then, we can compute the next iterate  $d^k$  according to Lemma 8.66:

$$\beta_{k-1} = -\frac{(r^k, Ad^{k-1})}{(d^{k-1}, Ad^{k-1})}, \quad d^k = r^k - \beta_{k-1}d^{k-1}. \quad (102)$$

For the new coefficient  $\alpha_k$  in  $x^{k+1} = x^0 + \sum_{i=0}^k \alpha_i d^i$  holds with testing in the Galerkin equation (101) with  $d^k$ :

$$\left( \underbrace{b - Ax^0}_{=d^0} - \sum_{i=0}^k \alpha_i Ad^i, d^k \right) = (b - Ax^0, d^k) - \alpha_k (Ad^k, d^k) = (b - Ax^0 + \underbrace{A(x^0 - x^k)}_{\in K_k}, d^k) - \alpha_k (Ad^k, d^k).$$

That is

$$\alpha_k = \frac{(r^k, d^k)}{(Ad^k, d^k)}, \quad x^{k+1} = x^k + \alpha_k d^k. \quad (103)$$

This allows to compute the new defect  $r^{k+1}$ :

$$r^{k+1} = b - Ax^{k+1} = b - Ax^k - \alpha_k Ad^k = r^k - \alpha_k Ad^k \quad (104)$$

We summarize (102 – 104) and formulate the classical CG scheme:

**Algorithm 8.67.** *Let  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  symmetric positive definite and  $x^0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $r^0 = d^0 = b - Ax^0$  be given. Iterate for  $k = 0, 1, \dots$ :*

1.  $\alpha_k = \frac{(r^k, d^k)}{(Ad^k, d^k)}$
2.  $x^{k+1} = x^k + \alpha_k d^k$
3.  $r^{k+1} = r^k - \alpha_k Ad^k$
4.  $\beta_k = \frac{(r^{k+1}, Ad^k)}{(d^k, Ad^k)}$
5.  $d^{k+1} = r^{k+1} - \beta_k d^k$

Without round-off errors, the CG scheme yields after (at most)  $n$  steps the solution of a  $n$ -dimensional problem and is in this sense a direct method rather than an iterative scheme. However, in practice for huge  $n$ , the CG scheme is usually stopped earlier, yielding an approximate solution.

**Proposition 8.68** (CG as a direct method). *Let  $x^0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  be any initial guess. Assuming no round-off errors, the CG scheme terminates after (at most)  $n$  steps with  $x^n = x$ . At each step, we have:*

$$Q(x^k) = \min_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}} Q(x^{k-1} + \alpha d^{k-1}) = \min_{y \in x^0 + K_k} Q(y)$$

i.e.,

$$\|b - Ax^k\|_{A^{-1}} = \min_{y \in x^0 + K_k} \|b - Ay\|_{A^{-1}}$$

with the norm

$$\|x\|_{A^{-1}} = (A^{-1}x, x)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

*Proof.* That the CG scheme is a direct scheme follows from Lemma 8.65.

The iterate is given by

$$Q(x^k) = \min_{y \in x^0 + K_k} Q(y),$$

which is equivalent to (101). The ansatz

$$x^k = x^0 + \sum_{k=0}^{k-1} \alpha_k d^{k-1} = x^0 + \underbrace{y^{k-1}}_{\in K_{t-1}} + \alpha_{t-1} d^{k-1}$$

yields

$$(b - Ax^k, d^j) = (b - Ay^{k-1}, d_j) - \alpha_{t-1}(Ad^{k-1}, d^j) = 0 \quad \forall j = 0, \dots, t-1$$

that is

$$(b - Ay^{k-1}, d_j) = 0 \quad \forall j = 0, \dots, t-2,$$

and therefore  $y^{k-1} = x^{k-1}$  and

$$Q(x^k) = \min_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}} Q(x^{k-1} + \alpha d^{k-1}).$$

Finally, employing symmetry  $A = A^T$ , we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \|b - Ay\|_{A^{-1}}^2 &= (A^{-1}[b - Ay], b - Ay)_2 = (Ay, y)_2 - (A^{-1}b, Ay)_2 - (y, b)_2 \\ &= (Ay, y)_2 - 2(b, y)_2, \end{aligned}$$

i.e., the relationship  $\|b - Ay\|_{A^{-1}}^2 = 2Q(y)$ .  $\square$

**Remark 8.69** (The CG scheme as iterative scheme). *As previously mentioned, in practice the CG scheme is (always) used as iterative method rather than a direct method. Due to round-off errors the search directions are never 100% orthogonal.*

**8.8.3.2 Convergence analysis of the CG scheme** We now turn our attention to the convergence analysis, which is a nontrivial task. The key is the following characterization of one iteration  $x^k = x^0 + K_k$  by

$$x^k = x^0 + p_{k-1}(A)d^0,$$

where  $p_{k-1} \in P_{k-1}$  is a polynomial in  $A$ :

$$p_{k-1}(A) = \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \alpha_i A^i$$

The characterization as minimization of Proposition 8.68 can be written as:

$$\|b - Ax^k\|_{A^{-1}} = \min_{y \in x^0 + K_k} \|b - Ay\|_{A^{-1}} = \min_{q \in P_{k-1}} \|b - Ax^0 - Aq(A)d^0\|_{A^{-1}}.$$

When we employ the  $\|\cdot\|_A$  norm, we obtain with  $d^0 = b - Ax^0 = A(x - x^0)$

$$\|b - Ax^k\|_{A^{-1}} = \|x - x^k\|_A = \min_{q \in P_{k-1}} \|(x - x^0) - q(A)A(x - x^0)\|_A,$$

that is

$$\|x - x^k\|_A = \min_{q \in P_{k-1}} \|[I - q(A)A](x - x^0)\|_A.$$

In the sense of the best approximation property, we can formulate this task as:

$$p \in P_{k-1} : \quad \|[I - p(A)A](x - x^0)\|_A = \min_{q \in P_{k-1}} \|[I + q(A)A](x - x^0)\|_A. \quad (105)$$

The characterization as best approximation is key in the convergence analysis of the CG scheme. Let  $q(A)A \in P_k(A)$ . We seek a polynomial  $q \in P_k$  with  $q(0) = 1$ , such that

$$\|x^k - x\|_A \leq \min_{q \in P_k, q(0)=1} \|q(A)\|_A \|x - x^0\|_A. \quad (106)$$

The convergence of the CG method is related to the fact whether we can construct a polynomial  $q \in P_k$  with  $p(0) = 1$  such that the  $A$  norm is as small as possible. First, we have:

**Lemma 8.70** (Bounds for matrix polynomials). *Let  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  symmetric positive definite with the eigenvalues  $0 < \lambda_1 \leq \dots \leq \lambda_n$ , and  $p \in P_k$  a polynomials with  $p(0) = 1$ :*

$$\|p(A)\|_A \leq M, \quad M := \min_{p \in P_k, p(0)=1} \sup_{\lambda \in [\lambda_1, \lambda_n]} |p(\lambda)|.$$

*Proof.* See [29].  $\square$

Employing the previous result and the error estimate (106), we can now derive a convergence result for the CG scheme.

**Proposition 8.71** (Convergence of the CG scheme). *Let  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  be symmetric positive definite. Let  $b \in \mathbb{R}^n$  a right hand side vector and let  $x^0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  be an initial guess. Then:*

$$\|x^k - x\|_A \leq 2 \left( \frac{1 - 1/\sqrt{\kappa}}{1 + 1/\sqrt{\kappa}} \right)^k \|x^0 - x\|_A, \quad k \geq 0,$$

with the spectral condition  $\kappa = \text{cond}_2(A)$  of the matrix  $A$ .

**Remark 8.72.** We see immediately that a large condition number  $\kappa \gg 1$  yields

$$\frac{1 - 1/\sqrt{\kappa}}{1 + 1/\sqrt{\kappa}} \rightarrow 1$$

and deteriorates significantly the convergence rate of the CG scheme. This is the key reason why preconditioners of the form  $P^{-1} \approx A^{-1}$  are introduced that re-scale the system; see Section 8.8.4:

$$\underbrace{P^{-1}A}_{\approx I} x = P^{-1}b.$$

Computations to substantiate these findings are provided in Section 8.9.5.

*Proof.* Of Prop. 8.71.

From the previous lemma and the estimate (106) it follows

$$\|x^k - x\|_A \leq M \|x^0 - x\|_A$$

with

$$M = \min_{q \in P_k, q(0)=1} \max_{\lambda \in [\lambda_1, \lambda_n]} |q(\lambda)|.$$

We have to find a sharp estimate of the size of  $M$ . That is to say, we seek a polynomial  $q \in P_k$  which takes at the origin the value 1, i.e.,  $q(0) = 1$  and which simultaneously has values near 0 in the maximum norm in the interval  $[\lambda_1, \lambda_n]$ . To this end, we work with the Tschebyscheff approximation (see e.g., [29] and references therein for the original references). We seek a best approximation  $p \in P_k$  of the zero function on  $[\lambda_1, \lambda_n]$ . Such a polynomial should have the property  $p(0) = 1$ . For this reason, the trivial solution  $p = 0$  is not valid. A Tschebyscheff polynomial reads:

$$T_k = \cos(k \arccos(x))$$

and has the property:

$$2^{-k-1} \max_{[-1,1]} |T_k(x)| = \min_{\alpha_0, \dots, \alpha_{k-1}} \max_{[-1,1]} |x^k + \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \alpha_i x^i|.$$

We choose now the transformation:

$$x \mapsto \frac{\lambda_n + \lambda_1 - 2t}{\lambda_n - \lambda_1}$$

and obtain with

$$p(t) = T_k \left( \frac{\lambda_n + \lambda_1 - 2t}{\lambda_n - \lambda_1} \right) T_k \left( \frac{\lambda_n + \lambda_1}{\lambda_n - \lambda_1} \right)^{-1}$$

a polynomial of degree  $k$ , which is minimal on  $[\lambda_1, \lambda_n]$  and can be normalized by

$$p(0) = 1.$$

It holds:

$$\sup_{t \in [\lambda_1, \lambda_n]} |p(t)| = T_k \left( \frac{\lambda_n + \lambda_1}{\lambda_n - \lambda_1} \right)^{-1} = T_k \left( \frac{\kappa + 1}{\kappa - 1} \right)^{-1} \quad (107)$$

with the spectral condition:

$$\kappa := \frac{\lambda_n}{\lambda_1}.$$

We now employ the Tschebyscheff polynomials outside of  $[-1, 1]$ :

$$T_n(x) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ (x + \sqrt{x^2 - 1})^n + (x - \sqrt{x^2 - 1})^n \right]$$

For  $x = \frac{\kappa+1}{\kappa-1}$ , it holds:

$$\frac{\kappa+1}{\kappa-1} + \sqrt{\left(\frac{\kappa+1}{\kappa-1}\right)^2 - 1} = \frac{\kappa+2\sqrt{\kappa}+1}{\kappa-1} = \frac{\sqrt{\kappa}+1}{\sqrt{\kappa}-1}$$

and therefore

$$\frac{\kappa+1}{\kappa-1} - \sqrt{\left(\frac{\kappa+1}{\kappa-1}\right)^2 - 1} = \frac{\sqrt{\kappa}-1}{\sqrt{\kappa}+1}.$$

Using this relationship, we can estimate (107):

$$T_k \left( \frac{\kappa+1}{\kappa-1} \right) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \left( \frac{\sqrt{\kappa}+1}{\sqrt{\kappa}-1} \right)^k + \left( \frac{\sqrt{\kappa}-1}{\sqrt{\kappa}+1} \right)^k \right] \geq \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{\sqrt{\kappa}+1}{\sqrt{\kappa}-1} \right)^k$$

It follows that

$$\sup_{t \in [\lambda_1, \lambda_n]} T_k \left( \frac{\kappa+1}{\kappa-1} \right)^{-1} \leq 2 \left( \frac{\sqrt{\kappa}-1}{\sqrt{\kappa}+1} \right)^k = 2 \left( \frac{1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{\kappa}}}{1 + \frac{1}{\sqrt{\kappa}}} \right)^k.$$

This finishes the proof.  $\square$

#### 8.8.4 Preconditioning

This section is copy and paste from [29][Section 7.8.1] and translation from German into English.

The rate of convergence of iterative schemes depends on the condition number of the system matrix. For instance, we recall that for second-order operators (such as Laplace) we have a dependence on the mesh size  $O(h^{-2}) = O(N)$  (in 2D) (see Section 11 for the relation between  $h$  and  $N$ ). For the CG scheme it holds:

$$\rho_{CG} = \frac{1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{\kappa}}}{1 + \frac{1}{\sqrt{\kappa}}} = 1 - \frac{2}{\sqrt{\kappa}} + O\left(\frac{1}{\kappa}\right).$$

Preconditioning reformulates the original system with the goal of obtaining a moderate condition number for the modified system. Let  $P \in \mathbb{P}^{n \times n}$  be a matrix with

$$P = KK^T.$$

Then:

$$Ax = b \Leftrightarrow \underbrace{K^{-1}A(K^T)^{-1}}_{=: \tilde{A}} \underbrace{K^T x}_{=: \tilde{x}} = \underbrace{K^{-1}b}_{=: \tilde{b}},$$

which is

$$\tilde{A}\tilde{x} = \tilde{b}.$$

In the case of

$$\text{cond}_2(\tilde{A}) \ll \text{cond}_2(A)$$

and if the application of  $K^{-1}$  is cheap, then the consideration of a preconditioned system  $\tilde{A}\tilde{x} = \tilde{b}$  yields a much faster solution of the iterative scheme. The condition  $P = KK^T$  is necessary such that the matrix  $\tilde{A}$  keeps its symmetry.

The preconditioned CG scheme (PCG) can be formulated as:

**Algorithm 8.73.** Let  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  symmetric positive definite and  $P = KK^T$  a symmetric preconditioner. Choosing an initial guess  $x^0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  yields:

1.  $r^0 = b - Ax^0$
2.  $Pp^0 = r^0$
3.  $d^0 = p^0$
4. For  $k = 0, 1, \dots$ 
  - a)  $\alpha_k = \frac{(r^k, d^k)}{(Ad^k, d^k)}$
  - b)  $x^{k+1} = x^k + \alpha_k d^k$
  - c)  $r^{k+1} = r^k - \alpha_k Ad^k$
  - d)  $Pp^{k+1} = r^{k+1}$
  - e)  $\beta_k = \frac{(r^{k+1}, p^{k+1})}{(r^k, g^k)}$
  - f)  $d^{k+1} = p^{k+1} + \beta_k d^k$

At each step, we have as additional cost the application of the preconditioner  $P$ . We recall that  $P$  allows the decomposition into  $K$  and  $K^T$  even if they are not explicitly used.

We seek  $P$  such that

$$P \approx A^{-1}.$$

On the other hand

$$P \approx I,$$

such that the construction of  $P$  is not too costly. Obviously, these are two conflicting requirements. Typical preconditioners are:

- *Jacobi preconditioning*

We choose  $P \approx D^{-1}$ , where  $D$  is the diagonal part of  $A$ . It holds

$$D = D^{\frac{1}{2}}(D^{\frac{1}{2}})^T,$$

which means that for  $D_{ii} > 0$ , this preconditioner is admissible. For the preconditioned matrix, it holds

$$\tilde{A} = D^{-\frac{1}{2}}AD^{-\frac{1}{2}} \Rightarrow \tilde{a}_{ii} = 1$$

- *SSOR preconditioning*

The SSOR scheme is a symmetric variant of the SOR method (successive over-relaxation) and is based on the decomposition:

$$P = (D + \omega L)D^{-1}(D + \omega R) = \underbrace{(D^{\frac{1}{2}} + \omega LD^{-\frac{1}{2}})}_K \underbrace{(D^{\frac{1}{2}} + \omega D^{-\frac{1}{2}}R)}_{=K^T}.$$

For instance, for the Poisson problem, we can find an optimal  $\omega$  (which is a non-trivial task) such that

$$\text{cond}_2(\tilde{A}) = \sqrt{\text{cond}_2(A)}$$

can be shown. Here, the convergence improves significantly. The number of necessary steps to achieve a given error reduction by a factor of  $\epsilon$  improves to

$$t_{CG}(\epsilon) = \frac{\log(\epsilon)}{\log(1 - \kappa^{-\frac{1}{2}})} \approx -\frac{\log(\epsilon)}{\sqrt{\kappa}}, \quad \tilde{t}_{CG}(\epsilon) = \frac{\log(\epsilon)}{\log(1 - \kappa^{-\frac{1}{4}})} \approx \frac{\log(\epsilon)}{\sqrt[4]{\kappa}}.$$

Rather than having 100 steps, we only need 10 steps for instance, in case an optimal  $\omega$  can be found.

## 8.9 Numerical tests: computational convergence analysis and solver behavior

We finish this chapter with several numerical tests in 1D, 2D and 3D.

### 8.9.1 2D Poisson

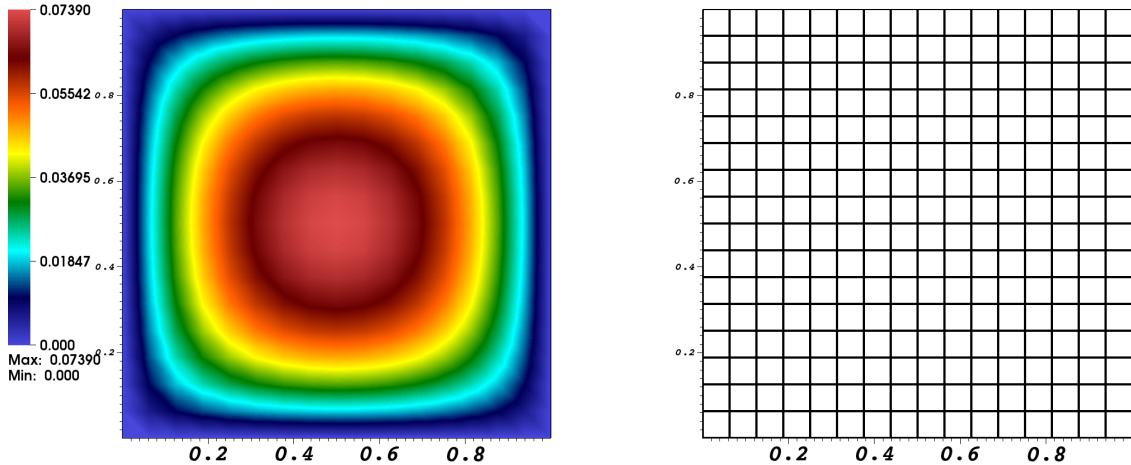


Figure 19: The graphical solution (left) and the corresponding mesh (right).

We compute Poisson in 2D on  $\Omega = (0, 1)^2$  and homogeneous Dirichlet conditions on  $\partial\Omega$ . The force is  $f = 1$ . We use a quadrilateral mesh using  $Q_1$  elements (in an isoparametric FEM framework). The number of mesh elements is 256 and the number of DoFs is 289. We need 26 CG iterations (see Section 8.8.3 for the development of the CG scheme), without preconditioning, for the linear solver to converge.

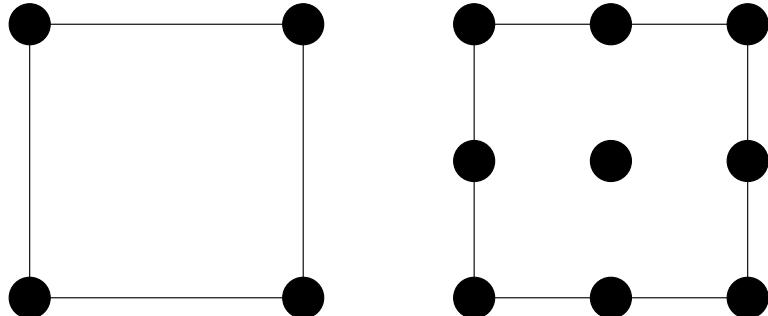


Figure 20:  $Q_1$  (bilinear) and  $Q_2$  (biquadratic) elements on a quadrilateral in 2D.

### 8.9.2 Numerical test: 3D

Number of elements: 4096  
 Number of DoFs: 4913  
 Number of iterations: 25 CG steps without preconditioning.

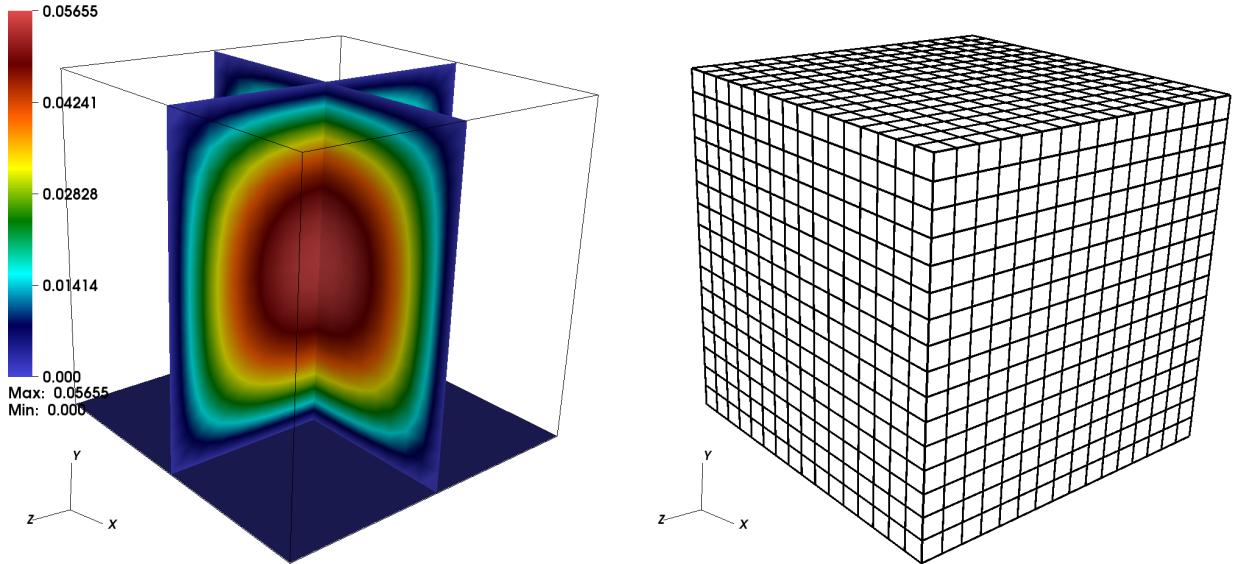


Figure 21: The graphical solution (left) and the corresponding mesh (right).

### 8.9.3 Checking programming code and convergence analysis for linear and quadratic FEM

We present a general algorithm and present afterwards 2D results.

**Algorithm 8.74.** Given a PDE problem. E.g.  $-\Delta u = f$  in  $\Omega$  and  $u = 0$  on the boundary  $\partial\Omega$ .

1. Construct by hand a solution  $u$  that fulfills the boundary conditions.
2. Insert  $u$  into the PDE to determine  $f$ .
3. Use that  $f$  in the finite element simulation to compute numerically  $u_h$ .
4. Compare  $u - u_h$  in relevant norms (e.g.,  $L^2, H^1$ ).
5. Check whether the desired  $h$  powers can be obtained for small  $h$ .

We demonstrate the previous algorithm for a 2D case in  $\Omega = (0, \pi)^2$ :

$$\begin{aligned} -\Delta u(x, y) &= f \quad \text{in } \Omega, \\ u(x, y) &= 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega, \end{aligned}$$

and we construct  $u(x, y) = \sin(x) \sin(y)$ , which fulfills the boundary conditions (trivial to check! But please do it!). Next, we compute the right hand side  $f$ :

$$-\Delta u = -(\partial_{xx}u + \partial_{yy}u) = 2\sin(x)\sin(y) = f(x, y).$$

**8.9.3.1 2D Poisson: Linear FEM** We then use  $f$  in the above program from Section 8.9.1 and evaluate the  $L^2$  and  $H^1$  norms using linear FEM. The results are:

Level	Elements	DoFs	h	L2 err	H1 err
2	16	25	1.11072	0.0955104	0.510388
3	64	81	0.55536	0.0238811	0.252645
4	256	289	0.27768	0.00597095	0.126015
5	1024	1089	0.13884	0.00149279	0.0629697
6	4096	4225	0.06942	0.0003732	0.0314801
7	16384	16641	0.03471	9.33001e-05	0.0157395
8	65536	66049	0.017355	2.3325e-05	0.00786965
9	262144	263169	0.00867751	5.83126e-06	0.00393482
10	1048576	1050625	0.00433875	1.45782e-06	0.00196741
11	4194304	4198401	0.00216938	3.64448e-07	0.000983703

In this table we observe that we have quadratic convergence in the  $L^2$  norm and linear convergence in the  $H^1$  norm. For a precise (heuristic) computation, we also refer to Chapter 11 in which a formula for computing the convergence orders  $\alpha$  is derived.

**8.9.3.2 2D Poisson: Quadratic FEM** We use again  $f$  in the above program from Section 8.9.1 and evaluate the  $L^2$  and  $H^1$  norms using quadratic FEM. The results are:

Level	Elements	DoFs	h	L2 err	H1 err
2	16	81	1.11072	0.00505661	0.0511714
3	64	289	0.55536	0.000643595	0.0127748
4	256	1089	0.27768	8.07932e-05	0.00319225
5	1024	4225	0.13884	1.01098e-05	0.000797969
6	4096	16641	0.06942	1.26405e-06	0.000199486
7	16384	66049	0.03471	1.58017e-07	4.98712e-05
8	65536	263169	0.017355	1.97524e-08	1.24678e-05
9	262144	1050625	0.00867751	2.46907e-09	3.11694e-06
10	1048576	4198401	0.00433875	3.08687e-10	7.79235e-07
11	4194304	16785409	0.00216938	6.14696e-11	1.94809e-07

In this table we observe that we have cubic convergence  $O(h^3)$  in the  $L^2$  norm and quadratic convergence  $O(h^2)$  in the  $H^1$  norm. This confirms the theory; see for instance [6]. For a precise (heuristic) computation, we also refer to Chapter 11 in which a formula for computing the convergence orders  $\alpha$  is derived.

We next plot the DoFs versus the errors in Figure 22 in order to highlight the convergence orders. For the relationship between  $h$  and DoFs versus the errors in different dimensions, we refer again to Chapter 11.

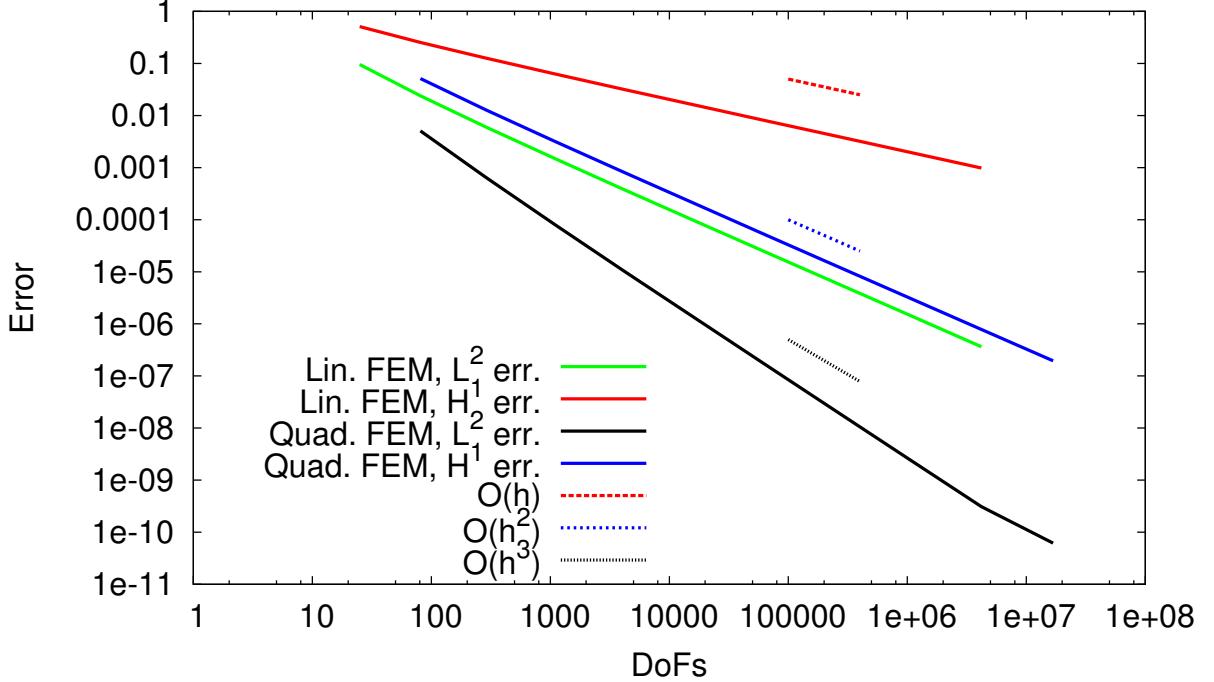


Figure 22: Plotting the DoFs versus the various errors for the 2D Poisson test using linear and quadratic FEM.

We confirm numerically the theory: we observe  $\|u - u_h\|_{L^2} = O(h^{r+1})$  and  $\|u - u_h\|_{H^1} = O(h^r)$  for  $r = 1, 2$ , where  $r$  is the FEM degree.

#### 8.9.4 Convergence analysis for 1D Poisson using linear FEM

We continue Section 8.5.8. As manufactured solution we use

$$u(x) = \frac{1}{2}(-x^2 + x),$$

on  $\Omega = (0, 1)$  with  $u(0) = u(1) = 0$ , which we derived in Section 8.2. In the middle point, we have  $u(0.5) = -0.125$  (in theory and simulations). In the following table, we plot the  $L^2$  and  $H^1$  error norms, i.e.,  $\|u - u_h\|_X$  with  $X = L^2$  and  $X = H^1$ , respectively.

Level	Elements	DoFs	$h$	L2 err	H1 err
1	2	3	0.5	0.0228218	0.146131
2	4	5	0.25	0.00570544	0.072394
3	8	9	0.125	0.00142636	0.0361126
4	16	17	0.0625	0.00035659	0.0180457
5	32	33	0.03125	8.91476e-05	0.00902154
6	64	65	0.015625	2.22869e-05	0.0045106
7	128	129	0.0078125	5.57172e-06	0.00225528
8	256	257	0.00390625	1.39293e-06	0.00112764
9	512	513	0.00195312	3.48233e-07	0.000563819
10	1024	1025	0.000976562	8.70582e-08	0.000281909

### 8.9.5 Iterative solver behavior

We consider the Poisson problem in 2D and 3D on the unit square and with force  $f = 1$  and homogeneous Dirichlet conditions. We use as solvers:

- CG
- PCG with SSOR preconditioning and  $\omega = 1.2$
- GMRES
- GMRES with SSOR preconditioning and  $\omega = 1.2$
- BiCGStab
- BiCGStab with SSOR preconditioning and  $\omega = 1.2$

The tolerance is chosen as  $TOL = 1.0e - 12$ . We also run on different mesh levels in order to show the dependency on  $n$ .

Dimension	Elements	DoFs	CG	PCG	GMRES	GMRES prec.	BiCGStab	BiCGStab prec.
2	256	289	23	19	23	18	16	12
2	1024	1089	47	33	83	35	33	21
2	4096	4225	94	60	420	78	66	44
<hr/>								
3	4096	4913	25	19	25	21	16	11
3	32768	35937	51	32	77	38	40	23
3	262144	274625	98	57	307	83	69	46
<hr/>								

Three main messages:

- GMRES performs worst.
- PCG performs better than pure CG, but less significant than one would wish.
- BiCGStab performs best - a bit surprising.

## 9 Combining FD and FE: Numerical discretization of the heat equation

In order to further apply our numerical concepts developed in the previous sections we consider the heat equation and perform a numerical discretization. The heat equation is a time-dependent PDE problem and requires discretization in space and time. Often in the literature, temporal discretization is based on FD whereas spatial discretization is based on the FEM.

The Rothe method, also known as horizontal method of lines, is a strategy to discretize a PDE in time  $t$  and space  $(x, y, z)$ . In particular the PDE is first discretized in time with a finite difference scheme (thus we first need the methodology developed in Chapter 7). In the second step, the problem is discretized in space with the finite element method developed in Chapter 8.

### 9.1 Problem

Compute the heat distribution in a room. Let us first develop a model. We assume that we work on a macroscopic level and can assume continuum mechanics [13, 20]. We work with first principle laws: namely conservation of mass, momentum, angular momentum and energy. This would yield four different equations but actually we will have much less since certain assumptions can be made.

Furthermore, we need to gather initial and boundary conditions:

- What is the temperature in the room at the beginning?
- What is the temperature at the walls?

To illustrate the concepts we work in 1D (one spatial dimension) in the following.

### 9.2 Mathematical problem statement

Let  $\Omega$  be an open, bounded subset of  $\mathbb{R}^d$ ,  $d = 1$  and  $I := (0, T]$  where  $T > 0$  is the end time value. The IBVP (initial boundary-value problem) reads:

**Formulation 9.1.** *Find  $u := u(x, t) : \Omega \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that*

$$\begin{aligned} \rho \partial_t u - \nabla \cdot (\alpha \nabla u) &= f && \text{in } \Omega \times I, \\ u &= a && \text{on } \partial\Omega \times [0, T], \\ u(0) &= g && \text{in } \Omega \times t = 0, \end{aligned}$$

where  $f : \Omega \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $g : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $\rho$  are material parameters, and  $a \geq 0$  is a Dirichlet boundary condition. More precisely,  $g$  is the initial temperature and  $a$  is the wall temperature, and  $f$  is some heat source.

### 9.3 Temporal discretization

We first discretize in time. Here we use finite differences and more specifically we introduce the so-called **One-Step- $\theta$**  scheme, which allows for a compact notation for three major finite difference schemes: forward Euler ( $\theta = 0$ ), backward Euler ( $\theta = 1$ ), and Crank-Nicolson ( $\theta = 0.5$ ) well known from numerical methods for ODEs.

**Definition 9.2** (Choice of  $\theta$ ). *By the choice of  $\theta$ , we obtain the following time-stepping schemes:*

- $\theta = 0$ : 1st order explicit Euler time stepping;
- $\theta = 0.5$ : 2nd order Crank-Nicolson (trapezoidal rule) time stepping;
- $\theta = 0.5 + k_n$ : 2nd order shifted Crank-Nicolson which is shifted by the time step size  $k_n = t^n - t^{n-1}$  towards the implicit side;
- $\theta = 1$ : 1st order implicit Euler time stepping.

**Remark 9.3.** We notice that for problems with large time steps ( $k \geq 0.5$ ), we need to normalize/non-dimensionalize the equations in order to get the characteristic time step size that can be used for the shifted variant. Otherwise, you have  $\theta > 1$ , which is senseless. As alternative, one can use the Rannacher time-stepping by adding backward Euler steps on a regular basis [26].

To have good stability properties (namely A-stability) of the time-stepping scheme is important for temporal discretization of partial differential equations. Often (as here for the heat equation) we deal with second-order operators in space, such PDE-problems are generically (very) stiff with the order  $O(h^{-2})$ , where  $h$  is the spatial discretization parameter.

After these preliminary considerations, let us now discretize in time the above problem. We first create a time grid of the time domain  $I = [0, T]$  with  $N_T$  intervals and a time step size  $k = \frac{T}{N_T}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_t u - \nabla \cdot (\alpha \nabla u) &= f \\ \Rightarrow \frac{u^n - u^{n-1}}{k} - \theta \nabla \cdot (\alpha \nabla u^n) - (1-\theta) \nabla \cdot (\alpha \nabla u^{n-1}) &= \theta f^n + (1-\theta) f^{n-1} \\ \Rightarrow u^n - k\theta \nabla \cdot (\alpha \nabla u^n) &= u^{n-1} + k(1-\theta) \nabla \cdot (\alpha \nabla u^{n-1}) + k\theta f^n + k(1-\theta) f^{n-1} \end{aligned}$$

where  $u^n := u(t^n)$  and  $u^{n-1} := u(t^{n-1})$  and  $f^n := f(t^n)$  and  $f^{n-1} := f(t^{n-1})$ .

### 9.3.1 Spatial discretization

We take the temporally discretized problem and use a Galerkin finite element scheme to discretize in space. That is we multiply with a test function and integrate. We then obtain: Find  $u_h \in \{a + V_h\}$  such that for  $n = 1, 2, \dots, N_T$ :

$$(u_h^n, \varphi_h) - k\theta(\alpha \nabla u_h^n, \nabla \varphi_h) = (u^{n-1}, \varphi_h) + k(1-\theta)(\alpha \nabla u^{n-1}, \nabla \varphi_h) + k\theta(f^n, \varphi_h) + k(1-\theta)(f^{n-1}, \varphi_h)$$

for all  $\varphi_h \in V_h$ .

**Definition 9.4** (Specification of the problem data). For simplicity let us assume that there is no heat source  $f = 0$  and the material coefficients are specified by  $\alpha = 1$  and  $\rho = 1$ .

Furthermore, let us work with the explicit Euler scheme  $\theta = 0$ . Then we obtain:

$$(u_h^n, \varphi_h) = (u^{n-1}, \varphi_h) - k(\nabla u_h^{n-1}, \nabla \varphi_h)$$

The structure of this equation, namely

$$y^n = y^{n-1} + kf(t^{n-1}, y^{n-1}),$$

is the same as we know from ODEs. This means that we seek at each time  $t^n$  a finite element solution  $u_h^n$  on the spatial domain  $\Omega$ . With the help of the basis functions  $\varphi_{h,j}$  we can represent the spatial solution:

$$u_h^n(x) := \sum_{j=1}^{N_x} u_{h,j} \varphi_{h,j}, \quad u_{h,j} \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Then:

$$\sum_{j=1}^{N_x} u_{h,j}^n (\varphi_{h,j}, \varphi_{h,i}) = (u^{n-1}, \varphi_{h,i}) - k(\nabla u_h^{n-1}, \nabla \varphi_{h,i})$$

which results in a linear equation system:  $MU = B$ . Here

$$\begin{aligned} (M_{ij})_{i,j=1}^{N_x} &:= (\varphi_{h,j}, \varphi_{h,i}), \\ (U_j)_{j=1}^{N_x} &:= (u_{h,1}, \dots, u_{h,N}) \\ (B_i)_{i=1}^{N_x} &:= (u_h^{n-1}, \varphi_{h,i}) - k(\nabla u_h^{n-1}, \nabla \varphi_{h,i}). \end{aligned}$$

Furthermore the old time step solution can be written as well in matrix form:

$$(u^{n-1}, \varphi_{h,i}) = \sum_{j=1}^{N_x} u_{h,j}^{n-1} \underbrace{(\varphi_{h,j}, \varphi_{h,i})}_{=:M}$$

and similarly for the Laplacian term:

$$(\nabla u^{n-1}, \nabla \varphi_{h,i}) = \sum_{j=1}^{N_x} u_{h,j}^{n-1} \underbrace{(\nabla \varphi_{h,j}, \nabla \varphi_{h,i})}_{=:K}.$$

The mass matrix  $M$  (also known as the Gramian matrix) is always the same for fixed  $h$  and can be explicitly computed.

**Proposition 9.5.** *Formally we arrive at: Given  $u_h^{n-1}$ , find  $u_h^n$ , such that*

$$Mu_h^n = Mu_h^{n-1} - kKu_h^{n-1} \Rightarrow u_h^n = u_h^{n-1} - kM^{-1}Ku_h^{n-1}.$$

for  $n = 1, \dots, N_T$ .

**Remark 9.6.** *We emphasize that the forward Euler scheme is not recommended to be used as time stepping scheme for solving PDEs. The reason is that the stiffness matrix is of order  $\frac{1}{h^2}$  and one is in general interested in  $h \rightarrow 0$ . Thus the coefficients become very large for  $h \rightarrow 0$  resulting in a stiff system. For stiff systems, as we learned before, one should better use implicit schemes, otherwise the time step size  $k$  has to be chosen too small in order to obtain stable numerical results; see the numerical analysis in Section 9.4.*

### 9.3.2 Evaluation of the integrals (1D in space)

We need to evaluate the integrals for the stiffness matrix  $K$ :

$$K = (K_{ij})_{ij=1}^{N_x} = \int_{\Omega} \varphi'_{h,j}(x) \varphi'_{h,i}(x) dx = \int_{x_{j-1}}^{x_{j+1}} \varphi'_{h,j}(x) \varphi'_{h,i}(x) dx$$

resulting in

$$A = h^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & & & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & -1 & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & -1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & & & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Be careful and do not forget the material parameter  $\alpha$  in case it is not  $\alpha = 1$ .

For the mass matrix  $M$  we obtain:

$$M = (M_{ij})_{ij=1}^{N_x} = \int_{\Omega} \varphi_{h,j}(x) \varphi_{h,i}(x) dx = \int_{x_{j-1}}^{x_{j+1}} \varphi_{h,j}(x) \varphi_{h,i}(x) dx.$$

Specifically on the diagonal, we calculate:

$$\begin{aligned} M_{ii} &= \int_{\Omega} \varphi_{h,i}(x) \varphi_{h,i}(x) dx = \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} \left( \frac{x - x_{i-1}}{h} \right)^2 dx + \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} \left( \frac{x_{i+1} - x}{h} \right)^2 dx \\ &= \frac{1}{h^2} \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} (x - x_{i-1})^2 dx + \frac{1}{h^2} \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} (x_{i+1} - x)^2 dx = \frac{h}{3} + \frac{h}{3} \\ &= \frac{2h}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

For the right off-diagonal, we have

$$\begin{aligned} m_{i,i+1} &= \int_{\Omega} \varphi_{h,i+1}(x) \varphi_{h,i}(x) dx = \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} \frac{x - x_i}{h} \cdot \frac{x_{i+1} - x}{h} dx = \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} \frac{x - x_i}{h} \cdot \frac{x_i - x + h}{h} dx \\ &= \dots \\ &= -\frac{h}{3} + \frac{h^2}{2h} = \frac{h}{6}. \end{aligned}$$

It is trivial to see that  $m_{i,i+1} = m_{i-1,i}$ . Summarizing all entries results in

$$M = \frac{h}{6} \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 & & & 0 \\ 1 & 4 & 1 & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ 0 & & & 1 & 4 \end{pmatrix}.$$

### 9.3.3 Final algorithms

We first setup a sequence of discrete (time) points:

$$0 = t_0 < t_1 < \dots < t_N = T.$$

Furthermore we set

$$I_n = [t_{n-1}, t_n], \quad k_n = t_n - t_{n-1}, \quad k := \max_{1 \leq n \leq N} k_n.$$

Forward (explicit) Euler:

**Algorithm 9.7.** Given the initial condition  $g$ , solve for  $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots, N_T$

$$Mu_h^n = Mu_h^{n-1} - kKu_h^{n-1} \Rightarrow u_h^n = u_h^{n-1} - kM^{-1}Ku_h^{n-1},$$

where  $u_h^n, u_h^{n-1} \in \mathbb{R}^{N_x}$ .

**Algorithm 9.8.** The backward (implicit) Euler scheme reads:

$$Mu_h^n + kKu_h^n = Mu_h^{n-1}$$

An example of a pseudo C++ code is

```
final_loop()
{
    // Initialization of model parameters, material parameters, and so forth
    set_runtime_parameters();

    // Make a mesh - decompose the domain into elements
    create_mesh();

    apply_initial_conditions();

    // Timestep loop
    do
    {
        std::cout << "Timestep " << timestep_number << " (" << time_stepping_scheme
        << ")" << ":" << time << " (" << timestep << ")"
        << "\n=====";
        << std::endl;
    }
}
```

```

std::cout << std::endl;

// Solve for next time step: Assign previous time step solution u^{n-1}
old_timestep_solution = solution;

// Assemble FEM matrix A and right hand side f
assemble_system ();

// Solve the linear equation system Ax=b
solve ();

// Update time
time += timestep;

// Write solution into a file or similar
output_results (timestep_number);

// Increment n->n+1
++timestep_number;
}

while (timestep_number <= max_no_timesteps);
}

```

**Exercise 15.** Let  $\Omega = (0, 1)$ . Implement a finite element scheme for solving

$$\partial_t u - \nabla \cdot (\nabla u) = 1 \quad \text{in } \Omega, \tag{108}$$

$$u = 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega, \tag{109}$$

$$u(0) = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega \times \{t = 0\}. \tag{110}$$

in octave or C++ or python.

**Exercise 16.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open, bounded subset of  $\mathbb{R}^d$ ,  $d = 1$  and  $I := (0, T]$  where  $T > 0$  is the end time value. The IBVP (initial boundary-value problem) reads: Find  $u := u(x, t) : \Omega \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\rho \partial_t u - \nabla \cdot (\alpha \nabla u) = f \quad \text{in } \Omega \times I, \tag{111}$$

$$u = a \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega \times [0, T], \tag{112}$$

$$u(0) = g \quad \text{in } \Omega \times t = 0, \tag{113}$$

where  $f : \Omega \times I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $g : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $\rho > 0$  are material parameters, and  $a \geq 0$  is a Dirichlet boundary condition. More precisely,  $g$  is the initial temperature and  $a$  is the wall temperature, and  $f$  is some heat source.

1. Using finite differences in time and finite elements in space, implement the heat equation in octave or python (Hint: Try to implement a general One-Step- $\theta$  scheme with  $\theta \in [0, 1]$  for temporal discretization and linear finite elements for spatial discretization).

2. Set  $\Omega = (-10, 10)$ ,  $f = 0$ ,  $\alpha = 1$ ,  $\rho = 1$ ,  $a = 0$ ,  $T = 1$ , and

$$g = u(0) = \max(0, 1 - x^2).$$

and carry out simulations for  $\theta = 0, 0.5, 1$ . What do you observe? Why do you make these observations?

3. Justify (either mathematically or physically) the correctness of your findings.
4. Why do you observe difficulties using  $\theta < 0.5$ . What is the reason and how can this difficulty be overcome?

5. Detecting the order of the temporal scheme: Choose a sufficiently fine spatial discretization (by choosing make the spatial discretization parameter  $h$  be sufficiently small) and compute with different time step sizes  $\delta t$  the value of the point  $u(x_0, T) := u(x = 0; T = 1)$ . Compute the error

$$|u_{\delta t_l}(x = 0; T = 1) - u_{\delta t_{fine}}(x = 0; T = 1)|, \quad l = l_0, l_0/2, l_0/4, \dots$$

How does the error behave with respect to different  $\theta$ ?

## 9.4 Numerical analysis: stability analysis

The heat equation is a good example of a stiff problem (for the definition we refer back to Section 7.2) and therefore, implicit methods are preferred in order to avoid very, very small time steps in order to obtain stability. We substantiate this claim in the current section.

The model problem is

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_t u - \Delta u &= 0 && \text{in } \Omega \times I \\ u &= 0 && \text{on } \partial\Omega \times I, \\ u(0) &= u^0 && \text{in } \Omega \times \{0\}. \end{aligned}$$

Spatial discretization yields:

$$\begin{aligned} (\partial_t u_h, \phi_h) + (\nabla u_h, \nabla \phi_h) &= 0, \\ (u_h^0, \phi_h) &= (u^0, \phi_h). \end{aligned}$$

Backward Euler time discretization yields:

$$(u_h^n, \phi_h) + k(\nabla u_h^n, \nabla \phi_h) = (u_h^{n-1}, \phi_h)$$

It holds

**Proposition 9.9.** A basic stability estimate for the above problem is:

$$\|u_h^n\| \leq \|u_h^0\| \leq \|u^0\| \tag{114}$$

*Proof.* For the stability estimate we proceed as earlier and make a special choice for a test function:  $\phi_h := u_h^n$ . We then obtain:

$$\|u_h^n\|_{L^2}^2 + k|\nabla u_h^n|_{H^1}^2 = (u_h^{n-1}, u_h^n) \leq \frac{1}{2}\|u_h^{n-1}\|_{L^2}^2 + \frac{1}{2}\|u_h^n\|_{L^2}^2$$

which yields:

$$\frac{1}{2}\|u_h^n\|_{L^2}^2 - \frac{1}{2}\|u_h^{n-1}\|_{L^2}^2 + k|\nabla u_h^n|_{H^1}^2 \leq 0, \quad \forall n = 1, \dots, N.$$

Of course it further holds:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2}\|u_h^n\|_{L^2}^2 - \frac{1}{2}\|u_h^{n-1}\|_{L^2}^2 &\leq 0, \quad \forall n = 1, \dots, N, \\ \Leftrightarrow \frac{1}{2}\|u_h^n\|_{L^2}^2 &\leq \frac{1}{2}\|u_h^{n-1}\|_{L^2}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Taking the square root and applying the result back to  $n = 0$  yields

$$\frac{1}{2}\|u_h^n\|_{L^2} \leq \frac{1}{2}\|u_h^0\|_{L^2}$$

It remains to show the second estimate:

$$\|u_h^0\| \leq \|u^0\|$$

In the initial condition we choose the test function  $\varphi := u_h^0$  and obtain:

$$(u_h^0, u_h^0) = (u^0, u_h^0) \leq \frac{1}{2}\|u^0\| + \frac{1}{2}\|u_h^0\|$$

which shows the assertion.  $\square$

### 9.4.1 Stability analysis for backward Euler

A more detailed stability analysis that brings in the spatial discretization properties is based on the matrix notation and is as follows. We recapitulate and start from (see Section 9.3.3):

$$Mu_h^n + kKu_h^n = Mu_h^{n-1}$$

Then:

$$\begin{aligned} Mu_h^n + kKu_h^n &= Mu_h^{n-1} \\ \Rightarrow u_h^n + kM^{-1}Ku_h^n &= u_h^{n-1} \\ \Rightarrow (I + kM^{-1}K)u_h^n &= u_h^{n-1} \end{aligned}$$

Compare to the ODE notation:

$$(1 + z)y^n = y^{n-1}$$

Thus, the role of  $z = k\lambda$  is taken by  $kM^{-1}K$  thus  $\lambda \sim M^{-1}K$ . We know for the condition numbers

$$\kappa(M) = O(1), \quad \kappa(K) = O(h^{-2}), \quad h \rightarrow 0.$$

We proceed similar to ODEs, and obtain

$$u_h^n = (I + kM^{-1}K)^{-1}u_h^{n-1}$$

The goal is now to show that

$$(I + kM^{-1}K)^{-1} \leq 1.$$

To this end, let  $\mu_j, j = 1, \dots, M = \dim(V_h)$  be the eigenvalues of the matrix  $M^{-1}K$  ranging from the smallest eigenvalue  $\mu_1 \sim O(1)$  to the largest eigenvalue  $\mu_M \sim O(h^{-2})$ ; for a proof, we refer the reader to [22][Section 7.7]. Then:

$$|(I + kM^{-1}K)^{-1}| = \max_j \frac{1}{1 + k\mu_j} = \frac{1}{1 + k\mu_M}.$$

To have a stable scheme, we must have:

$$\frac{1}{1 + k\mu_M} < 1.$$

We clearly have then again from (114):

$$\|u_h^n\| \leq \|u_h^{n-1}\| \quad \Rightarrow \quad \|u_h^n\| \leq \|u_h^0\|$$

Furthermore, we see that the largest eigenvalue  $\mu_M$  will increase as  $O(h^{-2})$  when  $h$  tends to zero. Using the backward Euler or Crank-Nicolson scheme, this will be not a problem and both schemes are **unconditionally stable**.

### 9.4.2 Stability analysis for explicit Euler

Here, the stability condition reads:

$$u_h^n = (I - kM^{-1}K)u_h^{n-1}$$

yielding

$$|(I - kM^{-1}K)^{-1}| = |\max_j(1 - k\mu_j)| = |1 - k\mu_M|.$$

As before  $\mu_M = O(h^{-2})$ . To establish a stability estimate of the form  $\|u_h^n\| \leq \|u_h^{n-1}\|$ , it is required that

$$|1 - k\mu_M| \leq 1.$$

Resolving this estimate, we obtain

$$k\mu_M \leq 2 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad k \leq \frac{2}{\mu_M} = O(h^2),$$

thus

$$k \leq Ch^2, \quad C > 0. \quad (115)$$

Here, we only have **conditional stability in time**, namely the time step size  $k$  depends on the spatial discretization parameter  $h$ . Recall that in terms of accuracy and discretization errors we want to work with small  $h$ , then the time step size has to be extremely small in order to have a stable scheme. In practice this is in most cases not attractive at all and for this reason the forward Euler scheme does not play a role despite that the actual solution is cheaper than solving an implicit scheme.

**Exercise 17.** Derive stability estimates for the Crank-Nicolson scheme.

#### 9.4.3 Numerical tests

The series of numerical tests in this section has three goals:

- to show some figures to get an impression about simulation results;
- to show computationally that the stability results are indeed satisfied or violated;
- to show computationally satisfaction of the (discrete) maximum principle.

We consider the heat equation

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_t u - \Delta u &= 0, \quad \text{in } \Omega \times I \\ u &= 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega \times I, \\ u(x, 0) &= \sin(x) \sin(y) \quad \text{in } \Omega \times \{0\}. \end{aligned}$$

We compute 5 time steps, i.e.,  $T = 5s$ , with time step size  $k = 1s$ . The computational domain is  $\Omega = (0, \pi)^2$ . We use a One-step-theta scheme with  $\theta = 0$  (forward Euler) and  $\theta = 1$  (backward Euler).

The graphical results are displayed in the Figures 23 - 26. Due to stability reasons and violation of the condition  $k \leq ch^2$ , the forward Euler scheme is unstable (Figures 25 - 26). By reducing the time step size to  $k = 0.01s$  (the critical time step value could have been computed - the value  $k = 0.01s$  has been found by trial and error simply), we obtain stable results for the forward Euler scheme. These findings are displayed in Figure 27. However, to reach  $T = 5s$ , we need to compute 500 time steps, which is finally more expensive, despite being an explicit scheme, than the implicit Euler method.

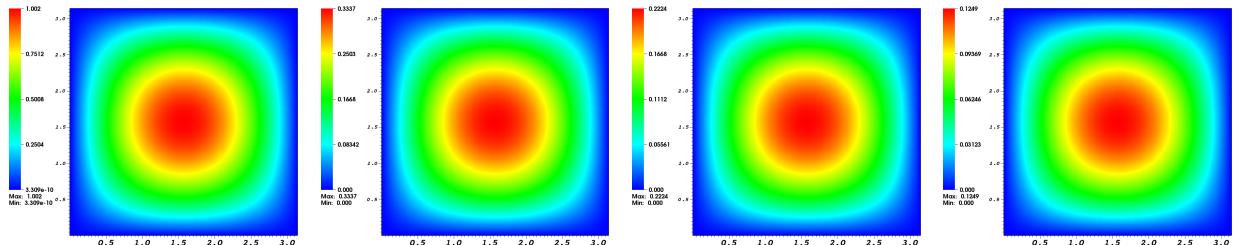


Figure 23: Heat equation with  $\theta = 1$  (backward Euler) at  $T = 0, 1, 2, 5$ . The solution is stable and satisfies the parabolic maximum principle. The color scale is adapted at each time to the minimum and maximum values of the solution.

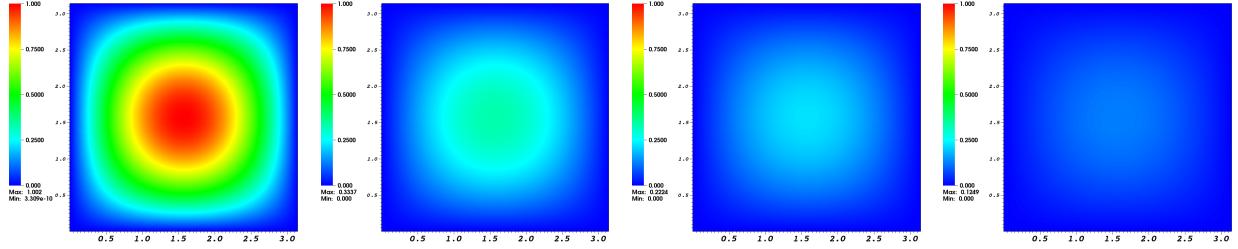


Figure 24: Heat equation with  $\theta = 1$  (backward Euler) at  $T = 0, 1, 2, 5$ . The solution is stable and satisfies the parabolic maximum principle. The color scale is fixed between 0 and 1.

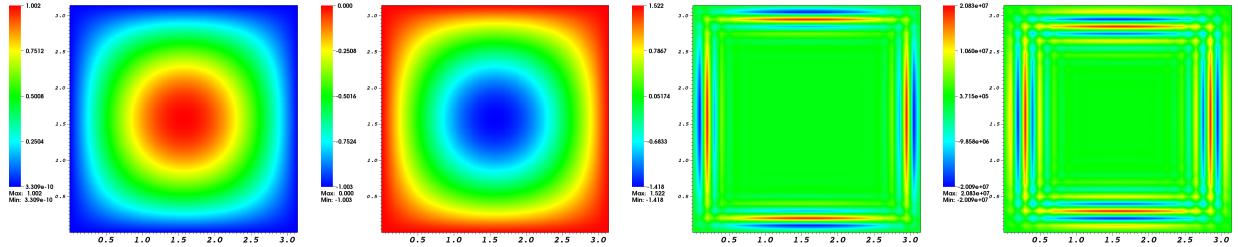


Figure 25: Heat equation with  $\theta = 0$  (forward Euler) at  $T = 0, 1, 2, 5$ . The solution is unstable, showing non-physical oscillations, because the time step restriction (115) is violated. The color scale is adapted at each time to the minimum and maximum values of the solution.

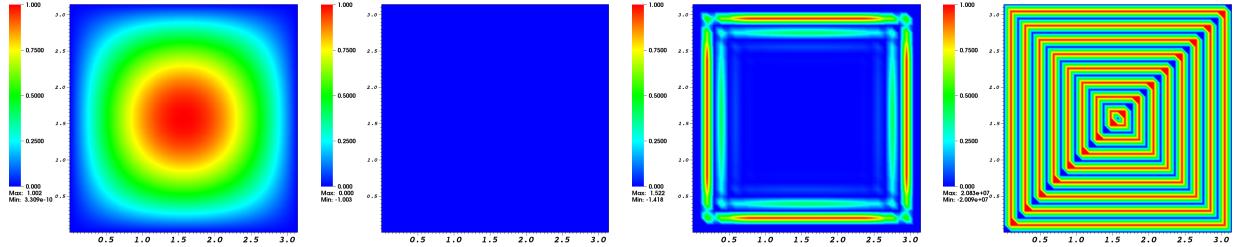


Figure 26: Heat equation with  $\theta = 0$  (forward Euler) at  $T = 0, 1, 2, 5$ . The solution is unstable, showing non-physical oscillations, because the time step restriction (115) is violated. The color scale is fixed between 0 and 1.

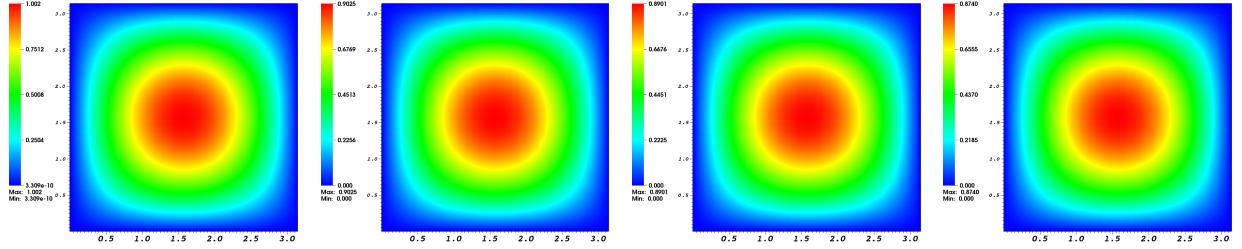


Figure 27: Heat equation with  $\theta = 0$  at  $T = 0, 1, 2, 5$  and time step size  $k = 0.01s$ . Here the results are stable since the time step size  $k$  has been chosen sufficiently small to satisfy the stability estimate (115). Of course, to obtain results at the same times  $T$  as before, we now need to compute more solutions, i.e.,  $N = 500$ , rather than 5 as in the other tests. The color scale is adapted at each time to the minimum and maximum values of the solution.

## 10 Towards nonlinear problems

In this final section, we want to give a brief idea how to tackle nonlinear problems. A lot of interesting situations are nonlinear and a basic course in numerics should teach (at least to give a flavor) how to tackle such problems. On the other hand, nonlinear solvers have been already required by solving IVP using implicit (backward Euler, Crank-Nicolson) time stepping schemes. Thus, there are several reasons to introduce nonlinear techniques in this class. Partially we also refer to Bronshtain et al. [7][Chapter 19.1.1] in which a useful summary of numerical iterative methods is given.

### 10.1 Preface

Let us first recall some examples of nonlinear differential equations (in fact exclusively PDEs):

1. Nonlinear solid mechanics: either geometrically nonlinear or through the stress-strain law; e.g., [9, 20];
2. Fluid mechanics: Navier-Stokes equations, e.g., [34];
3. Non-Newtonian fluid flow (e.g., p-Stokes), e.g., [19];
4. Fluid-structure interaction (nonlinear coupled PDE systems), e.g., [36];
5. Multiphase flow in porous media (nonlinear coupled PDE systems), e.g., [8];
6. In general every situation in which different physical phenomena interact;
7. Numerical optimization, e.g., [1, 24].

To tackle such problems, a nonlinear solver is indispensable, but for coupled PDE systems, further decisions have to be made. But we only list them without providing (unfortunately) any further details in these lecture notes. These are:

- A robust and efficient nonlinear solver (a brief introduction with some details is provided in Section 10.5);
- A robust and efficient linear solver;
- For PDE systems: the way of coupling: partitioned (sequentially) or monolithic
- Combination of different coordinate systems: for instance when solids (described in Lagrangian coordinates) interact with fluid dynamics (described in Eulerian coordinates)

### 10.2 Linearization techniques

We discuss linearization techniques in the following subsections. The idea is to provide algorithmic frameworks that serve for the implementation. Concerning Newton's method for general problems there is not that much theory; see e.g., [11]. In general one can say that in many problems the theoretical assumptions are not met, but nevertheless Newton's method works well in practice.

Our list is as follows:

- Fixed-point iteration;
- Linearization via time-lagging;
- Extrapolation in time
- Newton's method.

### 10.3 Fixed-point iteration

In ODE computations, applying a fixed-point theorem, namely the Banach fixed point theorem, is called a **Picard iteration**. The basic idea is to introduce an iteration using an index  $k$  and to linearize the nonlinear terms by taking these terms from the previous iteration  $k - 1$ .

This is best illustrated in terms of an example. Let

$$-\Delta u + u^2 = f$$

The variational formulation reads:

$$(\nabla u, \nabla \phi) + (u^2, \phi) = (f, \phi) \quad \forall \phi \in V.$$

An iterative scheme is constructed as follows:

**Algorithm 10.1** (Fixed-point iterative scheme). *For  $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$  we seek  $u^{k+1} \in V$  such that*

$$(\nabla u^k, \nabla \phi) + (u^k u^{k-1}, \phi) = (f, \phi) \quad \forall \phi \in V,$$

*until a stopping criterion is fulfilled (choice one out of four):*

- *Error criterion:*

$$\begin{aligned} \|u^k - u^{k-1}\| &< TOL, & (\text{absolute}) \\ \|u^k - u^{k-1}\| &< TOL \|u^k\|, & (\text{relative}) \end{aligned}$$

- *Residual criterion:*

$$\begin{aligned} \|(\nabla u^k, \nabla \phi_i) + ([u^2]^k, \phi_i) - (f, \phi_i)\| &< TOL, & (\text{absolute}) \\ \|(\nabla u^k, \nabla \phi_i) + ([u^2]^k, \phi_i) - (f, \phi_i)\| &< TOL \|(f, \phi_i)\|, & (\text{relative}) \end{aligned}$$

for all  $i = 1, \dots, \dim(V_h)$ .

**Remark 10.2.** For time-dependent PDEs, a common linearization can be

$$(u^2, \phi) \rightarrow (u u^{n-1}, \phi)$$

where  $u^{n-1} := u(t^{n-1})$  is the previous time step solution. In this case, no additional fixed-point iteration needs to be constructed.

### 10.4 Linearization via time-lagging (example: NSE)

For time-dependent PDEs, a common linearization can be

$$(u^2, \phi) \rightarrow (u u^{n-1}, \phi)$$

where  $u^{n-1} := u(t^{n-1})$  is the previous time step solution. In this case, no additional fixed-point iteration needs to be constructed.

Let us know briefly explain this idea to Navier-Stokes to point an important property. Setting  $N(v) := v \cdot \nabla v - \nabla \cdot (\nabla v + \nabla v^T)$ , we write

$$\partial_t v + N(v) + \nabla p = f, \quad \nabla \cdot v = 0$$

be given.

### 10.4.1 Stokes linearization

Using the Stokes linearization (for small Reynolds numbers), the nonlinearity can be treated fully explicitly:

$$v + k\nabla p = v^{n-1} - kN(v^{n-1})k\theta f + k(1-\theta)f^{n-1}, \quad \nabla \cdot v = 0.$$

This simplifies the problem as it is now linear and in each step, the symmetric and positive Stokes-operator must be inverted.

### 10.4.2 Oseen linearization

For higher Reynold's numbers, the so-called Oseen linearization can be consulted:

$$v + k\theta\tilde{N}(v) + k\nabla p = v^{n-1} - k(1-\theta)\tilde{N}(v^{n-1})k\theta f + k(1-\theta)f^{n-1}, \quad \nabla \cdot v = 0,$$

where

$$\tilde{N}(v) = \tilde{v} \cdot \nabla v,$$

where, for instance a constant extrapolation  $\tilde{v} = v^{n-1}$  or linear extrapolation  $\tilde{v} = 2v^{n-1} - v^{n-2}$  can be employed; see also the next section. Here, at each step, a (linear) nonsymmetric diffusion-transport operator must be inverted.

## 10.5 Newton's method in $\mathbb{R}$ - the Newton-Raphson method

Let  $f \in C^1[a, b]$  with at least one point  $f(x) = 0$ , and  $x_0 \in [a, b]$  be a so-called initial guess. The task is to find  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$f(x) = 0.$$

In most cases it is impossible to calculate  $x$  explicitly. Rather we construct a sequence of iterates  $(x_k)_{k \in \mathbb{R}}$  and hopefully reach at some point

$$|f(x_k)| < TOL, \quad \text{where } TOL \text{ is small, e.g., } TOL = 10^{-10}.$$

What is true for all Newton derivations in the literature is that one has to start with a Taylor expansion. In our lecture we do this as follows. Let us assume that we are at  $x_k$  and can evaluate  $f(x_k)$ . Now we want to compute this next iterate  $x_{k+1}$  with the unknown value  $f(x_{k+1})$ . Taylor gives us:

$$f(x_{k+1}) = f(x_k) + f'(x_k)(x_{k+1} - x_k) + o(x_{k+1} - x_k)^2$$

We assume that  $f(x_{k+1}) = 0$  (or very close to zero  $f(x_{k+1}) \approx 0$ ). Then,  $x_{k+1}$  is the sought root and neglecting the higher-order terms we obtain:

$$0 = f(x_k) + f'(x_k)(x_{k+1} - x_k).$$

Thus:

$$x_{k+1} = x_k - \frac{f(x_k)}{f'(x_k)}, \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (116)$$

This iteration is possible as long as  $f'(x_k) \neq 0$ .

**Remark 10.3.** We see that Newton's method can be written as

$$x_{k+1} = x_k + d_k, \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots,$$

where the search direction is

$$d_k = -\frac{f(x_k)}{f'(x_k)}.$$

The iteration (116) terminates if a stopping criterion

$$\frac{|x_{k+1} - x_k|}{|x_k|} < TOL, \quad \text{or} \quad |x_{k+1} - x_k| < TOL, \quad (117)$$

or

$$|f(x_{k+1})| < TOL \quad (118)$$

is fulfilled. All these TOL do not need to be the same, but sufficiently small and larger than machine precision.

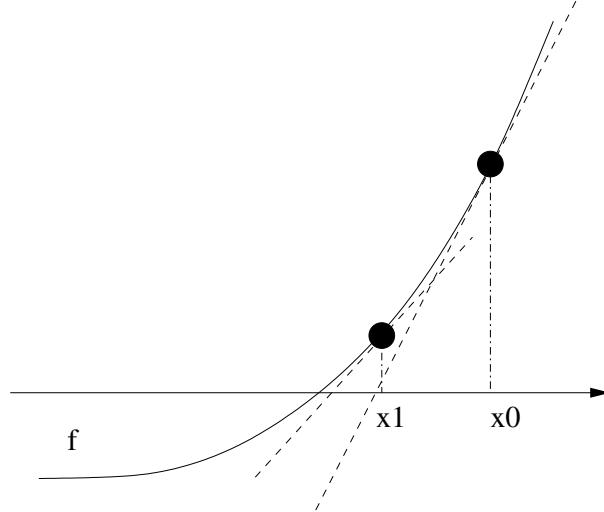


Figure 28: Geometrical interpretation of Newton's method.

**Remark 10.4.** *Newton's method belongs to fix-point iteration schemes with the iteration function:*

$$F(x) := x - \frac{f(x)}{f'(x)}. \quad (119)$$

For a fixed point  $\hat{x} = F(\hat{x})$  it holds:  $f(\hat{x}) = 0$ .

The main results is given by:

**Theorem 10.5** (Newton's method). *The function  $f \in C^2[a, b]$  has a root  $\hat{x}$  in the interval  $[a, b]$  and*

$$m := \min_{a \leq x \leq b} |f'(x)| > 0, \quad M := \max_{a \leq x \leq b} |f''(x)|.$$

Let  $\rho > 0$  such that

$$q := \frac{M}{2m}\rho < 1, \quad K_\rho(\hat{x}) := \{x \in \mathbb{R} : |x - \hat{x}| \leq \rho\} \subset [a, b].$$

Then, for any starting point  $x_0 \in K_\rho(\hat{x})$ , the sequence of iterations  $x_k \in K_\rho(\hat{x})$  converges to the root  $\hat{x}$ . Furthermore, we have the a priori estimate

$$|x_k - \hat{x}| \leq \frac{2m}{M}q^{2^k}, \quad k \in \mathbb{N},$$

and a posteriori estimate

$$|x_k - \hat{x}| \leq \frac{1}{m}|f(x_k)| \leq \frac{M}{2m}|x_k - x_{k+1}|^2, \quad k \in \mathbb{N}.$$

Often, Newton's method is formulated in terms of a defect-correction scheme.

**Definition 10.6** (Defect). *Let  $\tilde{x} \in \mathbb{R}$  an approximation of the solution  $f(x) = y$ . The defect (or similarly the residual) is defined as*

$$d(\tilde{x}) = y - f(\tilde{x}).$$

**Definition 10.7** (Newton's method as defect-correction scheme).

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x_k)\delta x &= d_k, \quad d_k := y - f(x_k), \\ x_{k+1} &= x_k + \delta x, \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots \end{aligned}$$

The iteration is finished with the same stopping criterion as for the classical scheme. To compute the update  $\delta x$  we need to invert  $f'(x_k)$ :

$$\delta x = (f'(x_k))^{-1} d_k.$$

This step seems trivial but is the most critical one if we deal with problems in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  with  $n > 1$  or in function spaces. Because here, the derivative becomes a matrix. Therefore, the problem results in solving a linear equation system of the type  $A\delta x = b$  and computing the inverse matrix  $A^{-1}$  is an expensive operation.  $\diamond$

**Remark 10.8.** This previous forms of Newton's method are already very close to the schemes that are used in research. One simply extends from  $\mathbb{R}^1$  to higher dimensional cases such as nonlinear PDEs or optimization. The 'only' aspects that are however big research topics are the choice of

- good initial Newton guesses;
- globalization techniques.

Two very good books on these topics, including further materials as well, are [11, 24].

### 10.5.1 Newton's method: overview. Going from $\mathbb{R}$ to $\mathbb{R}^n$

Overview:

- Newton-Raphson (1D), find  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  via iterating  $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$  such that  $x_k \approx x$  via:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Find } \delta x \in \mathbb{R} : \quad f'(x_k) \delta x &= -f(x_k), \\ \text{Update:} \quad x_{k+1} &= x_k + \delta x. \end{aligned}$$

- Newton in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , find  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$  via iterating  $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$  such that  $x_k \approx x$  via:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Find } \delta x \in \mathbb{R}^n : \quad F'(x_k) \delta x &= -F(x_k), \\ \text{Update:} \quad x_{k+1} &= x_k + \delta x. \end{aligned}$$

Here we need to solve a linear equation system to compute the update  $\delta x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ .

### 10.5.2 A basic algorithm for a residual-based Newton method

In this type of methods, the main criterion is a decrease of the residual in each step:

**Algorithm 10.9** (Residual-based Newton's method). *Given an initial guess  $x_0$ . Iterate for  $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$  such that*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Find } \delta x \in \mathbb{R}^n : \quad F'(x_k) \delta x_k &= -F(x_k), \\ \text{Update:} \quad x_{k+1} &= x_k + \lambda_k \delta x_k, \end{aligned}$$

with  $\lambda_k \in (0, 1]$  (see the next sections how  $\lambda_k$  can be determined). A full Newton step corresponds to  $\lambda_k = 1$ . The criterion for convergence is the contraction of the residuals measured in terms of a discrete vector norm:

$$\|F(x_{k+1})\| < \|F(x_k)\|.$$

In order to save some computational cost, close to the solution  $x^*$ , intermediate simplified Newton steps can be used. In the case of  $\lambda_k = 1$  we observe

$$\theta_k = \frac{\|F(x_{k+1})\|}{\|F(x_k)\|} < 1.$$

If  $\theta_k < \theta_{max}$ , e.g.,  $\theta_{max} = 0.1$ , then the old Jacobian  $F'(x_k)$  is kept and used again in the next step  $k + 1$ . Otherwise, if  $\theta_k > \theta_{max}$ , the Jacobian will be assembled. Finally the stopping criterion is one of the following (relative preferred!):

$$\begin{aligned} \|F(x_{k+1})\| &\leq TOL_N \quad (\text{absolute}) \\ \|F(x_{k+1})\| &\leq TOL_N \|F(x_0)\| \quad (\text{relative}) \end{aligned}$$

If fulfilled, set  $x^* := x_{k+1}$  and the (approximate) root  $x^*$  of the problem  $F(x) = 0$  is found.

**Exercise 18.** Let  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  with  $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 + 1}$ .

1. Compute the minimum of  $f(x)$ .
2. That is to solve  $f'(x) = 0$ .
3. Write down Newton's method.
4. Perform some steps (per hand) for different initial guesses  $x_0 = 0.5$  and  $x_0 = 2$  respectively.
5. Implement Newton's method and compute the solution  $\hat{x}$  to a tolerance  $TOL = 1e - 10$ .

**Exercise 19.** Let  $L : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  with

$$L(x, y, \lambda) = f(x) - \lambda c(x) = -x - 0.5y^2 - \lambda(1 - x^2 - y^2)$$

be given.

1. Find the minimum of  $L$ . What needs to be done?
2. Formulate Newton's method (formally; without implementation) for the previous minimization problem.

### 10.5.3 Example of the basic Newton method

We illustrate the basic Newton schemes with the help a numerical example in which we want to solve

$$x^2 = 2 \quad \text{in } \mathbb{R}$$

We reformulate this equation as root-finding problem:

$$f(x) = 0.$$

where

$$f(x) = x^2 - 2.$$

For Newton's method we need to compute the first derivative, which is trivial here,

$$f'(x) = 2x$$

but can become a real challenge for complicated problems. To start Newton's method (or any iterative scheme), we need an initial guess (similar to ODE-IVP). Let us choose  $x_0 = 3$ . Then we obtain as results:

Iter	x	f(x)
<hr/>		
0	3.000000e+00	7.000000e+00
1	1.833333e+00	1.361111e+00
2	1.462121e+00	1.377984e-01
3	1.414998e+00	2.220557e-03
4	1.414214e+00	6.156754e-07
5	1.414214e+00	4.751755e-14
<hr/>		

We see that Newton's method converges very fast, i.e., quadratically, which means that the correct number digits doubles at each iteration step.

### 10.5.4 Example using a Newton defect-correction scheme including line search

In this second example, we present Newton's method as defect correction scheme as introduced in Definition 10.7 and implemented in octave in Section 13.6. Additionally we introduce a line search parameter  $\omega \in [0, 1]$ . If the initial Newton guess is not good enough we can enlarge the convergence radius of Newton's method by choosing  $\omega < 1$ . Of course for the given problem here, Newton's method will always converge, because the underlying function is convex. Despite the fact that  $\omega$  is not really necessary in this example, we can highlight another feature very well. In the optimal case (as seen above in the results), Newton's method will converge quadratically. Any adaptation will deteriorate the performance. Thus, let us choose  $\omega = 0.9$ . Then we obtain as result only linear convergence:

Iter	x	f(x)
<hr/>		
0	3.000000e+00	7.000000e+00
1	1.950000e+00	1.802500e+00
2	1.534038e+00	3.532740e-01
3	1.430408e+00	4.606670e-02
4	1.415915e+00	4.816699e-03
5	1.414385e+00	4.840133e-04
6	1.414231e+00	4.842504e-05
7	1.414215e+00	4.842742e-06
8	1.414214e+00	4.842766e-07
9	1.414214e+00	4.842768e-08
10	1.414214e+00	4.842768e-09
11	1.414214e+00	4.842771e-10
12	1.414214e+00	4.842748e-11
<hr/>		

And if we choose  $\omega = 0.5$  we only obtain (perfect) linear convergence:

Iter	x	f(x)
<hr/>		
0	3.000000e+00	7.000000e+00
1	2.416667e+00	3.840278e+00
2	2.019397e+00	2.077962e+00
3	1.762146e+00	1.105159e+00
4	1.605355e+00	5.771631e-01
5	1.515474e+00	2.966601e-01
...		
32	1.414214e+00	2.286786e-09
33	1.414214e+00	1.143393e-09
34	1.414214e+00	5.716965e-10
35	1.414214e+00	2.858482e-10
36	1.414214e+00	1.429239e-10
37	1.414214e+00	7.146195e-11
<hr/>		

In summary, using a full Newton method we only need 5 iterations until a tolerance of  $TOL_N = 10^{-10}$  is reached. Having linear convergence with a good convergence factor still 12 iterations are necessary. And a linear scheme does need 37 iterations. This shows nicely the big advantage of Newton's method (i.e., quadratic convergence) in comparison to linear or super-linear convergence.

**Exercise 20.** Develop a Newton scheme in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  to find the root of the problem:

$$f : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2, \quad f(x, y) = \left( 2xay^2, 2(x^2 + \kappa)ay \right)^T,$$

where  $\kappa = 0.01$  and  $a = 5$ .

- 
1. Justify first that integration of  $f$  yields  $F(x, y) = (x^2 + \kappa)ay^2$ . What is the relation between  $f$  and  $F$ ?
  2. Compute the root of  $f$  by hand. Derive the derivative  $f'$  and study its properties.
  3. Finally, design the requested Newton algorithm. As initial guess, take  $(x_0, y_0) = (4, -5)$ .
  4. What do you observe with respect to the number of Newton iterations?
  5. How could we reduce the number of Newton steps?

## 10.6 Solving IVPs with implicit schemes

In Section 7.4.2, we introduced implicit schemes to solve ODEs. In specific cases, one can explicitly arrange the terms in such a way that an implicit scheme is obtained. This was the procedure for the ODE model problem in Section 13.2. However, such an explicit representation is not always possible. Rather we have to solve a nonlinear problem inside the time-stepping process. This nonlinear problem will be formulated in terms of a Newton scheme.

We recall:

$$y'(t) = f(t, y(t))$$

which reads after backward Euler discretization:

$$\frac{y_n - y_{n-1}}{k_n} = f(t_n, y_n(t_n)).$$

After re-arranging some terms we obtain the root-finding problem:

$$g(y_n) := y_n - y_{n-1} - k_n f(t_n, y_n(t_n)) = 0.$$

Taylor expansion yields (where the Newton iteration index is denoted by ‘l’):

$$0 = g(y_n^l) + g'(y_n^l)(y_n^{l+1} - y_n^l) + o((y_n^{l+1} - y_n^l)^2),$$

where the Newton matrix (the Jacobian) is given by

$$g'(y_n^l) := I - k_n f'_y(t_n, y_n^l).$$

The derivative  $f'_y$  is with respect to the unknown  $y_n$ .

In defect correction notation, we have

**Algorithm 10.10.** Given a starting value, e.g.,  $y_n^0$  we have for  $l = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ :

$$g'(y_n^l)\delta y = -g(y_n^l), \quad (120)$$

$$y_n^{l+1} = y_n^l + \delta y \quad (121)$$

Stop if  $\|g(y_n^{l+1})\| < TOL_N$  with e.g.,  $TOL_N = 10^{-8}$ .

The difficulty here is to understand the mechanism of the two different indices  $n$  and  $l$ . As before, we want to compute for a new time point  $t^{n+1}$  a solution  $y_{n+1}$ . However, in most cases  $y_{n+1}$  cannot be constructed explicitly as done for example in Section 6.1. Rather we need to approximate  $y_{n+1}$  by another numerical scheme. Here Newton’s method is one efficient possibility, in which we start with a rough approximation for  $y_{n+1}$ , which is denoted as initial Newton guess  $y_{n+1}^0 \approx y_{n+1}$ . In order to improve this initial guess, we start a Newton iteration labeled by  $l$  and (hope!) to find better approximations

$$y_{n+1}^1, y_{n+1}^2, \dots$$

for the sought value  $y_{n+1}$ . Mathematically speaking, we hope that

$$|y_{n+1}^l - y_{n+1}| \rightarrow 0, \quad \text{for } l \rightarrow \infty.$$

To make this procedure clear:

- we are interested in the true value  $y(t^{n+1})$ , which is however in most cases not possible to be computed in an explicit way.
- Thus, we use a finite difference scheme (e.g., backward Euler) to approximate  $y(t^{n+1})$  by  $y_{n+1}$ .
- However, in many cases this finite difference scheme (precisely speaking: implicit schemes) is still not enough to obtain directly  $y_{n+1}$ . Therefore, we need a second scheme (here Newton) to approximate  $y_{n+1}$  by  $y_{n+1}^l$ .

**Remark 10.11.** *To avoid two numerical schemes is one reason, why explicit schemes are nevertheless very popular in practice. Here the second scheme can be omitted.*

**Remark 10.12.** *On the other hand, this example is characteristic for many numerical algorithms: very often, we have several algorithms that interact with each other. One important question is how to order these algorithms such that the overall numerical scheme is robust and efficient.*



## 11 Computational convergence analysis

We provide some tools to perform a computational convergence analysis. In these notes we faced two situations of ‘convergence’:

- **Discretization error:** Convergence of the discrete solution  $u_h$  towards the (unknown) exact solution  $u$ ;
- **Iteration error:** Convergence of an iterative scheme to approximate the discrete solution  $u_h$  through a sequence of approximate solutions  $u_h^{(k)}$ ,  $k = 1, 2, \dots$

In the following we further illustrate the terminologies ‘first order convergence’, ‘convergence of order two’, ‘quadratic convergence’, ‘linear convergence’, etc.

### 11.1 Discretization error

Before we go into detail, we discuss the relationship between the degrees of freedom (DoFs)  $N$  and the mesh size parameter  $h$ . In most cases the discretization error is measured in terms of  $h$  and all a priori and a posteriori error estimates are stated in a form

$$\|u - u_h\| = O(h^\alpha), \quad \alpha > 0.$$

In some situations it is however better to create convergence plots in terms of DoFs vs. the error. One example is when adaptive schemes are employed with different  $h$ . Then it would be not clear to which  $h$  the convergence plot should be drawn. But simply counting the total numbers of DoFs is not a problem though.

#### 11.1.1 Relationship between $h$ and $N$ (DoFs)

The relationship of  $h$  and  $N$  depends on the basis functions (linear, quadratic), whether a Lagrange method (only nodal points) or Hermite-type method (with derivative information) is employed. Moreover, the dimension of the problem plays a role.

We illustrate the relationship for a Lagrange method with linear basis functions in 1D, 2D, 3D:

**Proposition 11.1.** *Let  $d$  be the dimension of the problem:  $d = 1, 2, 3$ . It holds*

$$N = \left(\frac{1}{h} + 1\right)^d$$

where  $h$  is the mesh size parameter (length of an element or diameter in higher dimensions for instance), and  $N$  the number of DoFs.

*Proof.* Sketch. No strict mathematical proof. We initialize as follows:

- 1D: 2 values per line;
- 2D: 4 values per quadrilaterals;
- 3D: 8 values per hexahedra.

Of course, for triangles or prisms, we have different values in 2D and 3D. We work on the unit cell with  $h = 1$ . All other  $h$  can be realized by just normalizing  $h$ . By simple counting the nodal values, we have in 1D

h	N
<hr/>	
1	2
1/2	3
1/4	5
1/8	9
1/16	17
1/32	33
...	
<hr/>	

We have in 2D

h	N
<hr/>	
1	4
1/2	9
1/4	25
1/8	36
1/16	49
1/32	64
...	
<hr/>	

We have in 3D

h	N
<hr/>	
1	8
1/2	27
1/4	64
...	
<hr/>	

□

### 11.1.2 Discretization error

With the previous considerations, we have now a relationship between  $h$  and  $N$  that we can use to display the discretization error.

**Proposition 11.2.** *In the approximate limit it holds:*

$$N \sim \left(\frac{1}{h}\right)^d$$

yielding

$$h \sim \frac{1}{\sqrt[d]{N}}$$

These relationships allow us to replace  $h$  in error estimates by  $N$ .

**Proposition 11.3** (Linear and quadratice convergence in 1D). *When we say a scheme has a linear or quadratic convergence in 1D, (i.e.,  $d = 1$ ) respectively, we mean:*

$$O(h) = O\left(\frac{1}{N}\right)$$

or

$$O(h^2) = O\left(\frac{1}{N^2}\right)$$

*In a linear scheme, the error will be divided by a factor of 2 when the mesh size  $h$  is divided by 2 and having quadratic convergence the error will decrease by a factor of 4. For an illustration, we refer the reader to Section 7.6.*

**Proposition 11.4** (Linear and quadratice convergence in 2D). *When we say a scheme has a linear or quadratic convergence in 2D, (i.e.,  $d = 2$ ) respectively, we mean:*

$$O(h) = O\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\right)$$

or

$$O(h^2) = O\left(\frac{1}{N}\right)$$

### 11.1.3 Computationally-obtained convergence order: example for the spatial mesh parameter $h$

We explain how to determine the convergence order via

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{\log(2)} \log \left( \left| \frac{P(h) - P(h/2)}{P(h/2) - P(h/4)} \right| \right). \quad (122)$$

We take the table from Section 8.9.3:

Level	DoFs	$h$	L2 err	H1 err
2	16	1.11072	0.0948434	0.510265
3	64	0.55536	0.0238378	0.252641
4	256	0.27768	0.00596821	0.126015
5	1024	0.13884	0.00149261	0.0629697
6	4096	0.06942	0.000373189	0.0314801
7	16384	0.03471	9.32994e-05	0.0157395
8	65536	0.017355	2.3325e-05	0.00786965
9	262144	0.00867751	5.83126e-06	0.00393482
10	1048576	0.00433875	1.45781e-06	0.00196741
11	4194304	0.00216938	3.64451e-07	0.000983703

In this table we observe that we have quadratic convergence in the  $L^2$  norm and linear convergence in the  $H^1$  norm.

## 11.2 Iteration error

Iterative schemes are used to approximate the discrete solution  $u_h$ . This has a priori nothing to do with the discretization error. The main interest is how fast can we get a good approximation of the discrete solution  $u_h$ . One example is given in Section 10.6 in which Newton's method is used to compute the discrete solutions of the backward Euler scheme.

To speak about convergence, we compare two subsequent iterations:

**Proposition 11.5.** *Let us assume that we have an iterative scheme to compute a root  $z$ . The iteration converges with order  $p$  when*

$$\|x_k - z\| \leq c \|x_{k-1} - z\|^p, \quad k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

with  $p \geq 1$  and  $c = \text{const}$ . In more detail:

- *Linear convergence:  $c \in (0, 1)$  and  $p = 1$ ;*
- *Superlinear convergence:  $c := c_k \rightarrow 0$ , ( $k \rightarrow \infty$ ) and  $p = 1$ ;*
- *Quadratic convergence  $c \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $p = 2$ .*

Cubic and higher convergence are defined as quadratic convergence with the respective  $p$ .

**Remark 11.6** (Other characterizations of superlinear and quadratic convergence). *Other (but equivalent) formulations for superlinear and quadratic convergence, respectively, in the case  $z \neq x_k$  for all  $k$ , are:*

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\|x_k - z\|}{\|x_{k-1} - z\|} &= 0, \\ \limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\|x_k - z\|}{\|x_{k-1} - z\|^2} &< \infty. \end{aligned}$$

**Corollary 11.7** (Rule of thumb). *A rule of thumb for quadratic convergence is: the number of correct digits doubles at each step. From our previous section, we have the example:*

Iter	x	f(x)
0	3.000000e+00	7.000000e+00
1	1.833333e+00	1.361111e+00
2	1.462121e+00	1.377984e-01
3	1.414998e+00	2.220557e-03
4	1.414214e+00	6.156754e-07
5	1.414214e+00	4.751755e-14

---

## 12 Concluding summary

### 12.1 Summary

The purpose of these notes has been on an introduction to numerical modeling, or more generally-speaking, an introduction to scientific computing. Here we restricted our focus to differential equations. The three key aspects of scientific computing are:

- Mathematical modeling of a given problem and its classification;
- Development and analysis of numerical algorithms;
- Implementation and debugging of programming code;

and they are linked by a fourth aspect:

- Interpretation of the obtained results and justification of their correctness.

We illustrated all these four steps in terms of ODEs and PDEs. The choice of differential equations has been made because they cover a wide range of possible applications in various fields such as continuum mechanics, fluid mechanics, solid mechanics, as well as engineering, physics, chemistry, biology, economics, and financial mathematics. Most of the algorithmic developments have been complemented with programming code in octave/MATLAB and python such that the concepts can be immediately used by the reader.

### 12.2 The principles of work, study and research tasks

The intention of this section is provide some help for the work on the student projects done in groups by two.  
The basic principle is:

WhatHowWhy?

- **What** are we doing (Problem statement)?
- **How** are we doing this (How are we going to solve that specific problem)?
- **Why** is the solution of this problem really important?

This can be further refined as:

WhatHowWhatHowWhy?

- **What** are we doing (Problem statement)?
- **How** are we doing this (How are we going to solve that specific problem)?
- **What** are our findings (results)?
- **How** are we going to interpret these results? (Is the code correct? Do the results correspond to my physical and mathematical intuition? If I have doubts, how can I verify the correctness of my numerical model and code?)
- **Why** is the solution of this problem really important?

**Example 12.1.** Let us take as an example the little numerical projects for this class and identify the above steps:

- **What** are we doing (Problem statement)?

**Answer:** We are solving an ODE or PDE. Let us say an ODE for the following points.

- **How** are we doing this (How are we going to solve that specific problem)?  
**Answer:** We apply for example the forward Euler scheme. But the ‘How’ might include more. Often we do not understand a given problem in its full complexity. (Actually this arises quite often!) In order to tackle the final problem, we should start with a simplification. For example, we make a nonlinear problem linear. Or a 2D problem is reduced to 1D. And so forth. To be able to make simplifications and to find examples to ‘illustrate’ a problem in some other way is in many cases the key to really understand this problem.
- **What** are our findings (results)?  
**Answer:** Take an initial value and end time value. Choose a step size and compute. Display your solution as a plot for example or compute the error to an exact solution if available (see Section 6.1).
- **How** are we going to interpret these results? (Is the code correct? Do the results correspond to my physical and mathematical intuition? If I have doubts, how can I verify the correctness of my numerical model and code?)  
**Answer:** For forward Euler and too big step sizes we obtain oscillations in the solution. It is now important to distinguish if these oscillations are on purpose (maybe we had some sinus-oscillation as initial condition) or a numerical artefact. Our stability brings us to the conclusion that in this case, we really had a numerical artefact that needs to be avoided. Specifically our step size  $k$  was too big and we learned in Thomas’ lecture that the forward Euler scheme is unstable if the step sizes are too big.
- **Why** is the solution of this problem really important?  
**Answer 1:** Because Thomas gave this exercise to pass this class!  
**Answer 2:** In research or industry or private sector or your own company: Who is interested in the solution of your results? Why did you tackle this task? What can you solve now what nobody before could solve? Or why did your new algorithm provide new insight into already known problems? These are some questions that should answer the **Why**.

### 12.3 Hints for presenting results in a presentation/talk

We collect some hints to make good presentations using, for instance, beamer latex or PowerPoint:

1. Rule of thumb: one minute per slide. For a 20 minutes presentation a good mean value is to have 20 slides.
2. A big risk of beamer/Power-Point presentations is that we rush over the slides. You are the expert and know everything! But your audience is not. Give the audience time to read the slide!
3. Tailor your talk to the audience!
4. Put a title on each slide!
5. In plots and figures: make lines, the legend, and axes big enough such that people from the back can still read your plots. A good **no go, bad** example are my figures 6 and 7 in which the legend is by far too small. Do not do that! A good example is Figure 28.
6. Tables with numbers: if you create columns of numbers do not put all of them. If you have many, you may mark the most important in a different color to highlight them. For instance, I used dots ... in Section 10.5.4 to neglect Newton iterates, which are of less importance and do not contribute to a further understanding.
7. Structure your talk clearly: what is the goal, how did you solve it, what are your results, what is your interpretation? See Section 12.2.
8. Do not glue to your slides. Despite you have everything there, try to explain things in a free speech.
9. Less is more:
  - a) Do not put too much text on each slide!

- b) Do not write full sentences, but use bullet points!
  - c) Do not use too fancy graphics charts, plots, etc, where everything is moving, etc.
  - d) Do not try to pack everything you have learned into one presentation. Everybody believes that you know many, many things. The idea of a presentation is to present in a clear way a piece of your work!
10. As always: the first sentence is the most difficult one: practice for yourself some nice welcome words to get smoothly started.
  11. Practice your final presentation ahead of time either alone, with friends or colleagues.
  12. Just be authentic during the presentation.
  13. If you easily become nervous avoid coffee before the presentation.



## 13 Programming codes

### 13.1 Short comments on MATLAB / octave

The package MATLAB is widely used for scientific computations. MATLAB is a trademark of TheMathsWorks Inc., 24 Prime Park Way, Natick, MA 01760. The website is [www.mathworks.com](http://www.mathworks.com). The open source sister language with similar commands is Octave (in detail GNU Octave) with the website [www.gnu.org](http://www.gnu.org). We use the latter one in these notes.

For both languages, an excellent introduction can be found in the textbook by Quarteroni et al. [25].

### 13.2 Code of Example 7.6 in Octave

We first define the three numerical schemes. These are defined in terms of octave-functions and which must be in the same directory where you later call these functions and run octave. Thus, the content of the next three functions is written into files with the names:

```
euler_forward_2.m  euler_backward_model_problem.m  trapezoidal_model_problem.m
```

Inside these m-files we have the following statements. Forward Euler:

```
function [x,y] = euler_forward_2(f,xinit,yinit,xfinal,n)
% Forward Euler scheme
% Author: Thomas Wick, CMAP, Ecole Polytechnique, 2016

h = (xfinal - xinit)/n;

x = [xinit zeros(1,n)];
y = [yinit zeros(1,n)];

for k = 1:n
    x(k+1) = x(k)+h;
    y(k+1) = y(k) + h*f(x(k),y(k));
end
end
```

Backward Euler (here the right hand side is also unknown). For simplicity we explicitly manipulate the scheme for this specific ODE. In the general case, the right hand side is solved in terms of a nonlinear solver.

```
function [x,y] = euler_backward_model_problem(xinit,yinit,xfinal,n,a)
% Backward Euler scheme
% Author: Thomas Wick, CMAP, Ecole Polytechnique, 2016

% Calculuate step size
h = (xfinal - xinit)/n;

% Initialize x and y as column vectors
x = [xinit zeros(1,n)];
y = [yinit zeros(1,n)];

% Implement method
for k = 1:n
    x(k+1) = x(k)+h;
    y(k+1) = 1./(1.0-h.*a) .*y(k);
end
end
```

And finally the trapezoidal rule (Crank-Nicolson):

---

```

function [x,y] = trapezoidal_model_problem(xinit,yinit,xfinal,n,a)
% Trapezoidal / Crank-Nicolson
% Author: Thomas Wick, CMAP, Ecole Polytechnique, 2016

% Calculate step size
h = (xfinal - xinit)/n;

% Initialize x and y as column vectors
x = [xinit zeros(1,n)];
y = [yinit zeros(1,n)];

% Implement method
for k = 1:n
    x(k+1) = x(k)+h;
    y(k+1) = 1./(1 - 0.5.*h.*a) .*(1 + 0.5.*h.*a).*y(k);
end
end

```

In order to have a re-usable code in which we can easily change further aspects, we do not work in the command line but define an octave-script; here with the name

**step\_1.m**

that contains initialization and function calls, visualization, and error estimation:

```

% Script file: step_1.m
% Author: Thomas Wick, CMAP, Ecole Polytechnique, 2016

% We solve three test scenarios
% Test 1: coeff_a = 0.25 as in the lecture notes.
% Test 2: coeff_a = -0.1
% Test 3: coeff_a = -10.0 to demonstrate
% numerical instabilities using explizit schemes

% Define mathematical model, i.e., ODE
% coeff_a = g - m
coeff_a = 0.25;
f=@(t,y) coeff_a.*y;

% Initialization
t0 = 2011;
tN = 2014;
num_steps = 16;
y0 = 2;

% Implement exact solution, which is
% available in this example
g=@(t) y0 .* exp(coeff_a .* (t-t0));
te=[2011:0.01:2014];
ye=[g(te)];

% Call forward and backward Euler methods
[t1,y1] = euler_forward_2(f,t0,y0,tN,num_steps);
[t2,y2] = euler_backward_model_problem(t0,y0,tN,num_steps,coeff_a);
[t3,y3] = trapezoidal_model_problem(t0,y0,tN,num_steps,coeff_a);

```

```
% Plot solution
plot (te,ye,t1,y1,t2,y2,t3,y3)
xlabel('t')
ylabel('y')
legend('Exact','FE','BE','CN')
axis([2011 2014 0 6])

% Estimate relative discretization error
errorFE=['FE err.: ' num2str((ye(end)-y1(end))/ye(end))]
errorBE=['BE err.: ' num2str((ye(end)-y2(end))/ye(end))]
errorCN=['CN err.: ' num2str((ye(end)-y3(end))/ye(end))]

% Estimate absolute discretization error
errorABS_FE=['FE err.: ' num2str((ye(end)-y1(end)))]
errorABS_BE=['BE err.: ' num2str((ye(end)-y2(end)))]
errorABS_CN=['CN err.: ' num2str((ye(end)-y3(end)))]
```

**Exercise 21.** Implement the backward Euler scheme and trapezoidal rule in a more general way that avoids the explicit manipulation with the right hand side  $f(t, y) = ay(t)$ . Hint: A possibility is (assuming that the function  $f$  is smooth enough) to formulate the above schemes as fixed-point equations and then either use a fixed-point method or Newton's (see Section 10.6) method to solve them. Apply these ideas to Example 4.

### 13.3 Short comments on Python

Python is a programming language that currently enjoys a lot of popularity in scientific computing. A website to get started and further information is <https://www.python.org/about/gettingstarted/>.

### 13.4 Code of Example 8.5.8 in python

The programming code is based on python version 2.7. In order to perform scientific computing with python some additional packages might have to be installed first (on some computers they are pre-installed though):

- numpy
- scipy
- matplotlib

The full code to obtain the previous results is:

```
#!/usr/bin/env python
# -*- coding: utf-8 -*-

# Thomas Wick
# Ecole Polytechnique
# MAP 502
# Winter 2016/2017

# Execution of *.py files
# Possibility 1: in terminal
# terminal> python3 file.py # here file.py = poisson.py

# Possibility 2: executing in an python environment
# such as spyder.

# This program has been tested with python
# version 2.7 on a SUSE linux system version 13.2
```

```
# Problem statement
# Numerical solution using finite
# elements of the Poisson problem:
#
# Find u such that
#
#      -d/dx (k d/dx) u = f in (0,1)
#      u(0) = u(1) = 0
#
#      with f=-1

#####
# Load packages (need to be installed first if
# not yet done - but is not difficult)
import numpy as np
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt # for plot functons
plt.switch_backend('tkAgg') # necessary for OS SUSE 13.1 version,
# otherwise, the plt.show() function will not display any window

import scipy as sp
from scipy import sparse
from scipy.sparse import linalg

import scipy.linalg # for the linear solution with Cholesky

#####
# Setup of discretization and material parameters
N = 200 # Number of points in the discretization
x = np.linspace(0,1,N) # Initialize nodal points of the mesh

# Spatial discretization parameter (step length) : h_i=x_{i+1}-x_i
hx = np.zeros(len(x))
hx[:len(x)-1]=x[1:]-x[:len(x)-1]

h = max(hx) # Maximal element diameter

# Sanity check
#print h

# Material parameter
k= 1.0 * np.ones(len(x))

#####
# Construct and plot exact solution and right hand side f

Nddl = N-2
xddl = x.copy()
xddl = xddl[1:len(x)-1]

# Initialize and construct exact solution
```

```

uexact = np.zeros(len(x))
uexact[1:len(x)-1] = 0.5 * (xddl * xddl - xdd1)

# Construct right hand side vector
f = (-1) * np.ones(len(x)-2)

#####
# Build system matrix and right hand side
Kjj = k[:N-2]/hx[:N-2] + k[1:N-1]/hx[1:N-1] # the diagonal of Kh
Kj jp = - k[1:N-2]/hx[1:N-2] # the two off-diagonals of Kh

# System matrix (also commonly known as stiffness matrix)
# First argument: the entries
# Second argument: in which diagonals shall the entries be sorted
Ah = sp.sparse.diags([Kj jp,Kjj,Kj jp],[-1,0,1],shape=(Nddl,Nddl))

# Right hand side vector
Fh= (hx[:N-2] + hx[1:N-1]) * 0.5 * f

#####
# Solve system: Ah uh = Fh => uh = Ah^{-1}Fh
utilde = sp.sparse.linalg.spsolve(Ah,Fh)

# Add boundary conditions to uh
# The first and last entry are known to be zero.
# Therefore, we include them explicitly:
uh = np.zeros(len(uexact))
uh[1:len(x)-1]=utilde

#####
# Plot solution
plt.clf()
plt.plot(x,uexact,'r', label='Exact solution $u$')
plt.plot(x,uh,'b+',label='Discrete FE solution $u_h$')
plt.legend(loc='best')
plt.xlim([-0.1,1.1])
plt.ylim([-0.15,0.01])
plt.show()

```

**Exercise 22.** In order to obtain more quantitative results, the following extensions of the above code could be done:

- Computational error analysis (which error norm?) to study the error between the exact and numerical solution on a sequence of refined meshes;
- Implementing high-order finite elements and carrying out again error analysis.

### 13.5 Code for a straightforward implementation of Newton's method (Example 10.5.3)

The programming code for standard Newton's method is as follows:

---

```
% Script file: step_2.m
% Author: Thomas Wick, CMAP, Ecole Polytechnique, 2016
% We seek a root of a nonlinear problem

format long

% Define nonlinear function of which
% we want to find the root
f = @(x) x^2 - 2;

% Define derivative of the nonlinear function
df = @(x) 2*x;

% We need an initial guess
x = 3;

% Define function
y = f(x);

% Set iteration counter
it_counter = 0;
printf('%i %e %e\n', it_counter, x, y);

% Set stopping tolerance
TOL = 1e-10;

% Perform Newton loop
while abs(y) > TOL
    dy = df(x);
    x = x - y/dy;
    y = f(x);
    it_counter = it_counter + 1;
    printf('%i %e %e\n', it_counter, x, y);
end
```

### 13.6 Code for a Newton defect-correction scheme including line search (Example 10.5.4)

As second implementation we present Newton's method as defect correction scheme as introduced in Definition 10.7. Additionally we introduce a line search parameter  $\omega \in [0, 1]$ . If the initial Newton guess is not good enough we can enlarge the convergence radius of Newton's method by choosing  $\omega < 1$ . The octave code reads:

```
% Script file: step_3.m
% Author: Thomas Wick, CMAP, Ecole Polytechnique, 2016
% We seek a root of a nonlinear problem

format long

% Define nonlinear function of which
% we want to find the root
f = @(x) x^2 - 2;

% Define derivative of the nonlinear function
df = @(x) 2*x;
```

```
% We need an initial guess
x = 3;

% Define function
y = f(x);

% Set iteration counter
it_counter = 0;
printf('%i %e %e\n',it_counter,x,y);

% Set stopping tolerance
TOL = 1e-10;

% Line search parameter
% omega \in [0,1]
% where omega = 1 corresponds to full Newton
omega = 1.0;

% Newtons method as defect correction
% and line search parameter omega
while abs(y) > TOL
    dy = df(x);
    % Defect step
    dx = - y/dy;
    % Correction step
    x = x + omega * dx;
    y = f(x);
    it_counter = it_counter + 1;
    printf('%i %e %e\n',it_counter,x,y);
end
```



## References

- [1] G. ALLAIRE, *Analyse numérique et optimisation*, Editions de l'Ecole Polytechnique, 2005.
- [2] ——, *An Introduction to Mathematical Modelling and Numerical Simulation*, Oxford University Press, 2007.
- [3] G. ALLAIRE AND F. ALOUGES, *Analyse variationnelle des équations aux dérivées partielles*. MAP 431: Lecture notes at Ecole Polytechnique, 2016.
- [4] D. ARNDT, W. BANGERTH, D. DAVYDOV, T. HEISTER, L. HELTAI, M. KRONBICHLER, M. MAIER, J.-P. PELTERET, B. TURCKSIN, AND D. WELLS, *The deal.II library, version 8.5*, Journal of Numerical Mathematics, (2017).
- [5] W. BANGERTH, R. HARTMANN, AND G. KANSCHAT, *deal.II – a general purpose object oriented finite element library*, ACM Trans. Math. Softw., 33 (2007), pp. 24/1–24/27.
- [6] D. BRAESS, *Finite Elemente*, Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg, Berlin, Heidelberg, vierte, überarbeitete und erweiterte ed., 2007.
- [7] I. BRONSHTEIN, K. SEMENDYAYEV, G. MUSIOL, AND H. MUEHLIG, *Handbook of Mathematics*, Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg, 5th edition ed., 2007.
- [8] G. CHAVENT AND J. JAFFRÉ, *Mathematical models and finite elements for reservoir simulation: single phase, multiphase and multicomponent flows through porous media*, vol. 17, Elsevier, 1986.
- [9] P. G. CIARLET, *Mathematical Elasticity. Volume 1: Three Dimensional Elasticity*, North-Holland, 1984.
- [10] P. G. CIARLET, *The finite element method for elliptic problems*, North-Holland, Amsterdam [u.a.], 2. pr. ed., 1987.
- [11] P. DEUFLHARD, *Newton Methods for Nonlinear Problems*, vol. 35 of Springer Series in Computational Mathematics, Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2011.
- [12] P. DEUFLHARD AND F. BORNEMANN, *Scientific computing with ordinary differential equations*, Texts in applied mathematics, Springer, New York, 2002.
- [13] C. ECK, H. GARCKE, AND P. KNABNER, *Mathematische Modellierung*, Springer, 2008.
- [14] L. C. EVANS, *Partial differential equations*, American Mathematical Society, 2010.
- [15] C. GOLL, T. WICK, AND W. WOLLNER, *DOpElab: Differential equations and optimization environment; A goal oriented software library for solving pdes and optimization problems with pdes*, Archive of Numerical Software, 5 (2017), pp. 1–14.
- [16] P. GRISVARD, *Elliptic Problems in Nonsmooth Domains*, vol. 24, Pitman Advanced Publishing Program, Boston, 1985.
- [17] C. GROSSMANN, H.-G. ROOS, AND M. STYNES, *Numerical Treatment of Partial Differential Equations*, Springer, 2007.
- [18] M. HANKE-BOURGEOIS, *Grundlagen der numerischen Mathematik und des Wissenschaftlichen Rechnens*, Vieweg-Teubner Verlag, 2009.
- [19] A. HIRN, *Finite Element Approximation of Problems in Non-Newtonian Fluid Mechanics*, PhD thesis, University of Heidelberg, 2012.
- [20] G. HOLZAPFEL, *Nonlinear Solid Mechanics: A continuum approach for engineering*, John Wiley and Sons, LTD, 2000.

- 
- [21] S. H. JOHN W. EATON, DAVID BATEMAN AND R. WEHBRING, *GNU Octave version 3.8.1 manual: a high-level interactive language for numerical computations*, CreateSpace Independent Publishing Platform, 2014. ISBN 1441413006.
  - [22] C. JOHNSON, *Numerical solution of partial differential equations by the finite element method*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1987.
  - [23] K. KOENIGSBERGER, *Analysis 2*, Springer Lehrbuch, Springer, Berlin – Heidelberg – New York, 5. auflage ed., 2004.
  - [24] J. NOCEDAL AND S. J. WRIGHT, *Numerical optimization*, Springer Ser. Oper. Res. Financial Engrg., 2006.
  - [25] A. QUARTERONI, F. SALERI, AND P. GERVASIO, *Scientific computing with MATLAB and Octave*, Texts in computational science and engineering, Springer, 2014.
  - [26] R. RANNACHER, *Finite element solution of diffusion problems with irregular data*, Numer. Math., 43 (1984), pp. 309–327.
  - [27] R. RANNACHER, *Analysis 2*. Vorlesungsskriptum, 2010.
  - [28] ———, *Numerik partieller Differentialgleichungen*, Heidelberg University Publishing, 2017.
  - [29] T. RICHTER AND T. WICK, *Einfuehrung in die numerische Mathematik - Begriffe, Konzepte und zahlreiche Anwendungsbeispiele*, Springer, 2017.
  - [30] M. SCHÄFER AND S. TUREK, *Flow Simulation with High-Performance Computer II*, vol. 52 of Notes on Numerical Fluid Mechanics, Vieweg, Braunschweig Wiesbaden, 1996, ch. Benchmark Computations of laminar flow around a cylinder.
  - [31] H. R. SCHWARZ, *Methode der finiten Elemente*, Teubner Studienbuecher Mathematik, 1989.
  - [32] G. STRANG, *Computational Science and Engineering*, Wellesley-Cambridge Press, 2007.
  - [33] F. T. SUTTMEIER AND T. WICK, *Numerische Methoden für partielle Differentialgleichungen (in german)*. Notes (Vorlesungsmitschrift) at University of Siegen, 2006.
  - [34] R. TEMAM, *Navier-Stokes Equations: Theory and Numerical Analysis*, AMS Chelsea Publishing, Providence, Rhode Island, 2001.
  - [35] D. WERNER, *Funktionalanalysis*, Springer, 2004.
  - [36] T. WICK, *Modeling, discretization, optimization, and simulation of fluid-structure interaction*. Lecture notes at Heidelberg University, TU Munich, and JKU Linz available on <https://www-m17.ma.tum.de/Lehrstuhl/LehreSoSe15NMFSIEn>, 2015.
  - [37] ———, *Numerical methods for partial differential equations*. Institute for Applied Mathematics, Leibniz Universitaet Hannover, Germany, 2018.

# Index

- A-stability, 50
- Ansatz function, 64
- Assembling in FEM, 76
- Assembling integrals, 76
- Big O, 17
- Bilinear form, 64
  - Norm, 64
  - Scalar product, 64
- Boundary value problem, 30, 59
- Bounded operator, 17
- Box rule, 78
- BVP, 30, 59
- Change of variables, 18, 19
- Compact support, 62
- Computational convergence analysis, 98
- Conditional stability, 110
- Consistency, 48, 51
- Continuous mapping, 17
- Convergence, 51
- Cross product, 15
- damping parameter, 90
- Defect, 116
- Deformation gradient, 19
- Degrees of freedom, 82
- descent method, 91
- Differential equation
  - Classification, 39
  - General definition, 38
  - Linear vs. nonlinear, 39
- Differential equations, 26
- Differential problem, 60
- Differentiation under the integral sign, 32
- Diffusion, 30
- Discretization error, 26
- Divergence, 14
- Divergence theorem, 19
- DoFs, 82
- Eigenvalues, 15
- Elasticity, 33
- Elliptic operator, 35
- Elliptic PDE, 35
- Errors in numerical mathematics, 26
- Euler
  - Backward, 47
  - Implicit, 47
- Euler method, 46
- Euler-Lagrange equations, 60
- Explicit schemes, 46
- FD, 45
- FE, 59
- FEM
  - 2D simulations, 98
  - 3D simulations, 99
  - Computational convergence analysis, 99
  - Quadratic, 85
- Finite differences, 45
- Finite element
  - Definition, 70
- Finite elements, 59, 65
  - Computational convergence analysis, 99
  - Construction of manufactured solution, 59
  - Construction of right hand side, 99
  - Error analysis, 99
  - Error analysis in simulations, 99
  - Manufactured solution, 99
  - Conforming, 66
  - Evaluation of integrals, 69
  - Linear, 65
  - Mesh, 65
  - Python code, 133
  - Weak form, 68
- Fixed point methods, 89
- Fixed-point iteration, 114
- Fluid flow equations, 34
- Forward Euler method, 46
- Frobenius scalar product, 64
- Fundamental lemma of calculus of variations, 62
- Galerkin equations, 68
- Galerkin method, 68
- Galerkin orthogonality, 92
- Gauß-Seidel method, 90
- Gradient, 14
- Gradient descent, 91
- Growth of a species, 29
- Hat function, 65
- Heat equation, 35, 36, 103
- Higher-order FEM, 85
- Hyperbolic PDE, 35
- IBVP, 103, 107
- Implicit schemes, 47
- Initial value problem, 29
- Integration by parts, 20, 61
- Iterative solution, 89
- IVP, 29, 45
- Jacobi method, 90
- Jacobian, 14

- 
- Krylov space, 92
- Landau symbols, 17
- Laplace equation, 30, 36
- Linear form, 63
- Linear functional, 17
- Linear operator, 16
- Little o, 17
- Mass matrix, 105
- Master element, 81, 83
- Mathematical modeling, 25
- MATLAB, 131
- Maximum norm, 16
- Midpoint rule, 78
- Minimization problem, 60
- Multiindex notation, 14
- Nabla operator, 14
- Navier-Stokes equations, 34
- Newton linearization, 115
- Newton's method, 113, 115
- Defect-correction, 116
  - Octave code, 135
  - overview, 117
  - Root finding problem, 135
- Nonlinear problems, 113
- Norm, 16
- Normal vector, 13
- Normed space, 16
- Numerical analysis
- Heat equation, 108
  - ODE, 48
- Numerical integration, 78
- Numerical methods, 25
- Numerical modeling, 25
- Challenges, 43
  - Philosophy, 44
- Numerical quadrature, 78
- Numerical simulations, 25
- Octave, 131
- Octave code, 131
- ODE, 26, 45
- Model problem, 34
- One-step schemes, 46
- One-Step-Theta scheme, 103
- One-step-theta scheme, 103
- Ordinary differential equation, 26
- Parabolic PDE, 35
- Partial differential equation, 26
- Partial integration, 20
- PDE, 26, 59
- Elliptic, 35
- Hyperbolic, 35
- Parabolic, 35
- Petrov-Galerkin method, 68
- Philosophy of numerical modeling, 44
- Picard iteration, 114
- Poisson
- 1D simulations, 71, 86
  - 2D simulations, 98
  - 3D simulations, 99
- Poisson equation, 35, 36
- Poisson problem, 30
- Population, 29
- Principal invariants of a matrix, 15
- Principle of minimum potential energy, 60
- Principle of virtual work, 43, 60
- Python, 133
- Quadratic FEM, 85
- Quadratur, 78
- Quadrature weights, 78
- Reference element, 81, 83
- relaxation parameter, 90
- Reynolds' transport theorem, 32
- Ritz method, 68
- Ritz-Galerkin method, 68
- Rotation, 15
- Runge-Kutta methods, 56
- Scalar product, 64
- Scientific computing, 25
- Challenges, 43
  - Search direction, 91
- Second order differential operator, 35
- Semi-norm, 16
- Separation of variables, 29
- Shape functions, 65
- Shape functions, 68
- Smooth functions, 62
- Software, 25
- Solid mechanics equation, 33
- Stability, 48, 49
- stability analysis, 108
- Stiff PDEs, 104
- stiff problem, 108
  - Stiffness, 45
- Stiffness matrix, 105
- Substitution rule, 18
- Taylor expansion, 51
- Test function, 60, 64
- Total potential energy, 60
- Trace, 14
- Transformation of integrals, 18
- Trapezoidal rule, 78

Trial function, 64

Unconditionally stable, 109

Variational problem, 60

Vector space, 15

Volume ratio, 19

Wave equation, 35, 37

Well-posedness, 28